

# BARRON'S

ESL PROFICIENCY SERIES



# PREPOSITIONS

- MORE THAN 60 COMMON PREPOSITIONS
- HUNDREDS OF EXERCISES TO SHARPEN FLUENCY



Jean Yates, Ph.D.

**BARRON'S**

**ESL PROFICIENCY SERIES**



# **PREPOSITIONS**

- **MORE THAN 60 COMMON PREPOSITIONS**
- **HUNDREDS OF EXERCISES TO SHARPEN FLUENCY**



**Jean Yates, Ph.D.**



# **PREPOSITIONS**

THIRD EDITION



Jean Yates, Ph.D.

## **Acknowledgments**

The author would like to thank Debbie Edson at Barron's for the opportunity to create this third edition and for her guidance in the process; professor Marichu Bucelli for her examples of preposition usage in Spanish and Italian, and linguist and professor Bill Zolar for his examples of preposition usage in German, Italian, and Spanish.

Thanks also to the rest of the team at Barron's: Kathryn Malm Bourgoine, Megan Buckman, Joanna Graham, Lauren Manoy, and Angela Tartaro for their insightful suggestions and hard work, especially under difficult conditions during the pandemic.

© Copyright 2020, 2011, 1999 by Jean Yates

All rights reserved under International and Pan-American Copyright Conventions. By payment of the required fees, you have been granted the non-exclusive, non-transferable right to access and read the text of this eBook on screen. No part of this text may be reproduced, transmitted, downloaded, decompiled, reverse engineered, or stored in or introduced into any information storage and retrieval system, in any form or by any means, whether electronic or mechanical, now known or hereinafter invented, without the express written permission of the publisher.

Published by Kaplan, Inc., d/b/a Barron's Educational Series  
750 Third Avenue  
New York, NY 10017

[www.barronseduc.com](http://www.barronseduc.com)

ISBN: 978-1-5062-6758-6

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Kaplan, Inc., d/b/a Barron's Educational Series, Inc. print books are available at special quantity discounts to use for sales promotions, employee premiums, or educational purposes. For more information or to purchase books, please call the Simon & Schuster special sales department at 866-506-1949.

# Table of Contents

## Introduction

## Part One: The Prepositions

How to Use Part One

Unit 1: About

Unit 2: Above

Unit 3: Across

Unit 4: After

Unit 5: Against

Unit 6: Ahead Of\*

Unit 7: Along

Unit 8: Among

Unit 9: Around

Unit 10: As

Unit 11: At

Unit 12: Back To\*/Back From\*

Unit 13: Before

Unit 14: Behind

Unit 15: Below

Unit 16: Beneath

Unit 17: Beside

Unit 18: Besides

Unit 19: Between

Unit 20: Beyond

Unit 21: But

Unit 22: By

Unit 23: Close To\*

Unit 24: Despite/In Spite Of\*

Unit 25: Down

Unit 26: During

Unit 27: Except

Unit 28: Far From\*

Unit 29: For

Unit 30: From

Unit 31: In

Unit 32: In Back Of\*

Unit 33: In Front Of\*

Unit 34: Inside

Unit 35: Instead Of\*

Unit 36: Into

Unit 37: Like

Unit 38: Near

Unit 39: Next To\*

Unit 40: Of

Unit 41: Off

Unit 42: On

Unit 43: Onto

Unit 44: On Top Of\*

Unit 45: Opposite

Unit 46: Out

Unit 47: Outside

Unit 48: Over

Unit 49: Past

Unit 50: Through

Unit 51: Throughout

Unit 52: To

Unit 53: Toward

Unit 54: Towards

Unit 55: Under

Unit 56: Underneath

Unit 57: Until

Unit 58: Up

Unit 59: With

Unit 60: Within

Unit 61: Without

## **Part Two: Prepositions by Function**

How to Use Part Two

Unit 1: Time

Unit 2: Location

Unit 3: Direction

Unit 4: Number

Unit 5: Weather

Unit 6: Source of Information

Unit 7: Affiliation

Unit 8: Description

Unit 9: Wearing

Unit 10: Topic

Unit 11: Recipient

Unit 12: State

Unit 13: Separation

Unit 14: Attitude

Unit 15: Behavior

## **Part Three: Using Prepositions**

How to Use Part Three

Unit 1: Prepositional Phrases

Unit 2: Prepositions in Questions

Unit 3: Prepositions in Noun Clauses

Unit 4: Prepositions in Adjective Clauses

## **Part Four: Phrasal Verbs**



## How to Use Part Four

Unit 1: Nonseparable Combinations

Unit 2: Must-Be-Separated Combinations

Unit 3: Separable Combinations

Unit 4: Nonseparable Combinations with an Additional Preposition

Unit 5: Separable Combinations with an Additional Preposition

Unit 6: Intransitive Combinations

Unit 7: Intransitive Verb-Adverb Combinations Followed by a Preposition

Unit 8: Phrasal Verbs Used as Nouns

Unit 9: Phrasal Verbs Used as Adjectives

## **Part Five: Prepositions as Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs**

Unit 1: Nouns

Unit 2: Adjectives

Unit 3: Verbs

## **Appendices**

Appendix 1: Answer Key

Appendix 2: Index of Phrases

\*Two- or three-word combinations that function as prepositions

## Introduction

Prepositions pose more problems for the non-native speaker or learner of English than any other part of speech. Why? Prepositions are just little words that never change in form; they are pronounced softly, in unstressed syllables; they aren't even given capital letters in book titles; native speakers choose the correct ones without thinking. How can they be confusing?

The word *preposition* has a straightforward definition: a word placed before a noun or pronoun to define its relationship with another word in the sentence. For the learner of English, however, prepositions are anything but straightforward.

- Prepositions are difficult, if not impossible, to define without using other prepositions.

Example:

In the sentence, "The book is on the table," what does on mean?

On means "above and supported by."

- In no other language are the prepositions (if they exist at all) the exact equivalents of English prepositions.

Examples:

### ***Spanish***

Tíralo a la basura.

Vamos a la casa de tu hermano.

Está a la izquierda.

La celebración empieza a medianoche.

### ***Italian***

Abita a Washington.

Penso a te.

Lui e all'aeroporto.

### ***German***

Er wohnt auf der New Jersey Avenue.

Er ist auf dem Flughafen.

Ich denke an dich.

### ***English***

Throw it in the trash.

Let's go to your brother's house.

It's on the left.

The celebration starts at midnight.

### ***English***

He lives in Washington.

I'm thinking about/of you.

He's at the airport.

### ***English***

He lives on New Jersey Avenue.

He is at the airport.

I'm thinking about/of you.

Werfen Sie es an den Abfall.

Throw it in the trash.

- Many preposition words can also be adverbs or conjunctions.

Examples:

the preposition down

She walked down the hill.

the adverb down

He put the book down.

the preposition after

She took a nap after lunch.

the conjunction after

She went outside after she put the book down.

- Many prepositions can indicate more than one meaning or relationship.

Examples with after:

later than

We rested after lunch.

in pursuit of

The cat is after the mouse.

because of

He was angry after the way she acted.

in the style of

This is a painting after Picasso. She worked night after night.

- Two or more prepositions can have the same meaning. Sometimes these prepositions are interchangeable.

Examples:

She is disappointed in her new job.

She is disappointed with her new job.

Sometimes they are not interchangeable.

Examples:

He is fascinated with his new job. (but not *in*)

He is interested in his new job. (but not *with*)

He is bored by his new job. (*by* or *with*, but not *in*)

- Many prepositions are also used in expressions where their meaning is entirely different from any of their predictable meanings. Expressions like this do not follow any pattern or logic, and do not allow for substitutions. They must be learned as vocabulary units.

Examples:

It's about time.

They are never on time.

She got here in time to see the whole show.

- A preposition in combination with another word may have multiple meanings.

Example:

<u>make up</u> your bed	-arrange
<u>make up</u> your face	-paint
<u>make up</u> your mind	-decide
<u>make up</u> a story	-invent
<u>make up</u> a list	-write down
<u>make up</u> the difference	-equalize
<u>make up</u> last week's homework	-do overdue work
<u>make up</u> for lost time	-compensate
<u>make up</u> with your girlfriend	-reestablish a relationship

- Different prepositions can follow the same verb to change its meaning completely.

Example:

break <u>down</u>	-collapse
break <u>in</u>	-enter by force
break <u>off</u>	-remove
break <u>out</u>	-erupt
break <u>out of</u>	-leave by force
break <u>through</u>	-establish a successful idea
break <u>up</u>	-end a relationship

- New preposition combinations continue to become part of the language.  
The following examples are relatively new:

<u>boot up</u>	-restart a computer
<u>key in</u>	-type text on the computer
<u>log on</u>	-connect to the Internet
<u>act out</u>	-misbehave (traditionally <i>act up</i> )
<u>change out</u>	-replace with
<u>swap out</u>	-replace with
<u>scope out</u>	-make a survey of
<u>listen up</u>	-pay attention

- Preposition words are sometimes “made into” other parts of speech.

Examples:

prepositions as nouns	I want to learn the <u>ins</u> and <u>outs</u> of prepositions.
prepositions as adjectives	The hospital has only a few <u>in</u> patients. There is a <u>down</u> side to his idea.
prepositions as verbs	I heard they were <u>upping</u> the price.

- There are some regional differences in preposition usage among native speakers.

Examples:

Most of the United States: <i>stand <u>in</u> line</i>	New York City: stand <u>on</u> line
Most of the United States: <i>graduate <u>from</u> high school/college/etc.</i>	Northeastern United States: <i>graduate high school/college/etc.</i>

As if all this weren't enough, English sentence patterns can also be troublesome, especially when prepositions are involved. The use of articles and pronouns and the formation of questions, adjective clauses, and noun clauses can be tricky.

*Prepositions* is designed to take the mystery out of prepositions for those whose first language is not English. It is a comprehensive handbook and guide that explains in detail the sixty-one commonly used English prepositions and their usage. It is easy to read and understand, and easy to use for quick reference or for more serious study.

Part One consists of a unit for each of the prepositions. Each unit includes all of the predictable definitions of the preposition, with typical grammar patterns, example sentences, and lists of the verbs and nouns that are most often used for each meaning. Idiomatic expressions and phrasal verbs are also defined and illustrated with examples. There are exercises at the end of each unit, and comprehensive exercises available online at [online.barronsbooks.com](http://online.barronsbooks.com).

Part Two provides charts and diagrams that illustrate and compare the functional usage of different prepositions. Each unit includes exercises and answers that will help the reader remember the guidelines.

Part Three gives formulas and examples that describe the use of prepositions before pronouns and verbs, in adjective and noun clauses, and in questions. Exercises at the end of each unit provide practice with these patterns.

Part Four is an exploration of phrasal verbs—idiomatic combinations that consist of a verb + a preposition—and of all the different ways these combinations can be used. Exercises follow each unit.

Part Five details cases where prepositions have merged with—and become prefixes to—certain nouns, adjectives, and verbs, giving them more specific meanings. In the appendices you will find answers to the exercises as well as a glossary for reference. This glossary is an alphabetical list of over 3,800 common adjectives, nouns, and verbs with the prepositions that normally precede and/or follow them, with the preposition name and section number of the text where the expression can be found, for further explanation of its meaning and use in a sentence.

## **To the Teacher**

This book is designed to be used as a reference, rather than a textbook to be followed unit by unit. It is adaptable for use with students of every level of proficiency—from beginners to those who are quite advanced and are seeking perfection. You are encouraged to pick and choose the units that best fit your particular classes—and order them in a way that works with your own approach and teaching plan. Exercises are included in every part of the book, but you may wish to devise your own instead, or supplement these with types that you know work for your students. Emphasize to your students that proficiency is best achieved through practice of correct usage, both oral and written, and that repeating the exercises can help them internalize preposition usage so that they will feel confident in speaking and writing.

There are explicit instructions throughout that are meant to help students improve proficiency in using prepositions and to get over occasional plateaus, where they feel they are not progressing. When they begin to see the patterns—and follow those patterns—soon they will be using prepositions naturally and will confidently move on to greater proficiency.

## **To the Student**

No matter what your level of English is, use this book to become more familiar with the patterns of English sentences. Train your ear to hear prepositions in conversations, and your eye to see them when you read. Ask yourself if you know the underlying meaning of each one. By all means, add new words you hear to the lists in the sections where they belong, and write down new expressions and phrasal verbs as you come across them. Mastering English prepositions is a challenge, but a valuable skill that will enhance your understanding and help you express yourself with confidence.

Following are some specific suggestions:

1. Read the introduction at the beginning of the book.

2. If you are a beginning student of English, begin with Part Two.
3. If you are more advanced, begin with Part One, Part Two, Part Three, or Part Four. You decide.
4. Do the exercises that follow each unit.
5. Write your answers on a separate sheet of paper, not in the book.
6. Check your answers with the Answer Key on p. 299.
7. If you have mistakes, write the correct answers down, and make sure you understand them. Repeat the exercises until you have no mistakes.
8. Repeat the exercises at different times in the future. This will help you memorize hundreds of expressions, correct usage, and perfect word order.

*Barron's ESL Proficiency Series: Prepositions* provides comprehensive exercises online for an optimal learning experience. Visit the Barron's Online Learning Hub:

**[online.barronsbooks.com](https://online.barronsbooks.com)**

Register now and begin your language-learning journey with Barron's!



PART ONE

# **The Prepositions**



## How to Use Part One

1. Each preposition is described the following ways:

- by its basic meaning

This is usually a meaning that can be demonstrated and contrasted with the meanings of other prepositions.

- by its inclusion in common expressions

Many expressions include prepositions that do not carry their basic meaning. The preposition is invariable—it cannot be replaced with a different one. Each expression should be learned as a single unit.

- by its use as a phrasal verb

A phrasal verb is a combination of a verb and a preposition that changes the meaning of the verb. The preposition does not carry its basic meaning. This combination should be considered as a single verb unit that has a unique definition.

2. Each definition of a preposition is followed by one or more *patterns*, which indicate the word order appropriate for the definition.

The verbs in each pattern can be changed to other tenses.

**Example:**

**Pattern** verb + *toward* + noun

*The money **goes** toward helping the family.*

This could also be:

*The money **went** toward helping the family.*

*The money **will go** toward helping the family.*

*The money **is going to go** toward helping the family.*

When a word cannot be substituted, that word is included in the pattern.

**Example:**

**Pattern** *be* + *after* + noun

*The reception **is** after the wedding.*

*be* is the only possible verb for this pattern.

When a word is optional, it is in parentheses.

**Example:**

**Pattern** *be* + *outside (of)* + **noun**

*The dog is outside the house.*

*The dog is outside **of** the house.*

When the word *noun* is in the pattern, use the normal patterns for noun usage, as outlined in Part Three.

**Example:**

**Pattern** **verb** + *against* + **noun**

*Dr. Jones is against **the** idea.*

This could also be:

*Dr. Jones is against **my** idea.*

*Dr. Jones is against **this** idea.*

*Dr. Jones is against **our** ideas.*

*Dr. Jones is against **some of their** ideas.*

When the noun determiner cannot be substituted, it is included in the pattern.

**Example:**

**Pattern** **verb** + *against* + *the* + **noun**

*We sailed against **the** wind for an hour.*

(*the* cannot be replaced by *a*, *this*, *my*, or any other word)

When the word *one's* is in the pattern, it can be replaced by any possessive adjective (*my*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our*, *their*)

**Example:**

**Pattern** *to* + *one's* + **noun**

*Someone will come to **your** aid.*

*Someone will come to **his** aid.*

*Someone will come to **our** aid.*

When no noun determiner is used, the symbol  $\emptyset$  is in the pattern. The symbol  $\emptyset$  means no normally acceptable or grammatically necessary word, such as *the*, is used in the expression, as in *to school* or *at home* or *in class*.

**Example:**

**Pattern** verb + *against* + **o** + noun

*I drive against traffic every morning.*

The typical verbs, nouns, and adjectives listed with each pattern are the most common words that are used with the preposition. It is a good idea to think of the combinations as units. As an exercise, you may wish to write sentences with the suggested words, following the pattern and keeping the meaning of the combination in mind.

# UNIT 1:

## About

### Basic Meaning

#### 1. About identifies a **topic**.

**Pattern 1** noun + *be* + *about* + noun

*This book is **about** prepositions.*

Nouns commonly used before *about*:

**argument, article, book, conversation, disagreement, discussion, joke, lecture, movie, news, play, program, report, speech, story**

**Pattern 2** noun + *about* + noun

*She gave me advice **about** my loan.*

Nouns commonly used before *about*:

**assurance, comment, complaint, gossip, lie, question, statement, truth**

**Pattern 3** verb + *about* + noun

*He often talks **about** his job.*

Verbs commonly used before *about*:

**agree, argue, brag, care, complain, cry, do, dream, forget, groan, hear, joke, know, laugh, lie, moan, pray, read, say, scream, sing, talk, think, wonder, worry, yell**

### Related Expressions

#### to see about

- to delay a decision until more information is known

*We want to buy a house, but we will **see about** that later.*

- to get information about

*I called that office **to see about** getting a job there.*

**to find out about** to get information about

*She called the school **to find out about** her daughter's behavior.*

**Pattern 4** verb + noun + *about*

*She knows something **about** airplanes.*

Typical verbs used with this pattern:

**ask, find out, know, learn, say**

Typical nouns used before *about*:

**a little, a lot, nothing, quite a bit, something, very little**

**Pattern 5** verb + indirect object + *about* + noun

*They asked me **about** my trip.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

**advise, ask, bother, contact, harass, inform, question, remind, teach, tell, write, warn**

**Pattern 6** adjective + *about* + noun

*They were very kind **about** our late arrival.*

Adjectives commonly used before *about*:

**charming, kind, nasty, nice, mean, rude, sweet, understanding, unkind**

## **2. About can identify the cause of an emotion or condition.**

**Pattern** adjective + *about* + noun

*We are excited **about** our vacation.*

Adjectives commonly used before *about*:

**angry, anxious, bashful, concerned, confused, crazy, excited, glad, happy, mad, nervous, objective, optimistic, pessimistic, right, sick, silly, unhappy, upset, worried**

## **3. About can mean approximately.**

**Pattern** *about* + number

*It is **about** nine o'clock.*

*We have **about** ten dollars each.*

## **4. About can mean in all parts of.**

**Pattern 1** *be* + **noun** + *about* + **noun**

*There is a lot of excitement **about** town.*

**Pattern 2** **past participle of verb** + *about* + **noun**

*Papers were scattered **about** the house.*

Typical past participles used before *about*:

**scattered, sprinkled, strewn, thrown**

## **5. About can describe a noun.**

**Pattern** *something/nothing* + **(adjective)** + *about* + **noun**

*There is something **about** her that I like.*

*There is something adorable **about** her.*

*There is nothing nice **about** that.*

Adjectives commonly used before *about*:

**adorable, attractive, bad, cute, exotic, fascinating, familiar, fishy, funny, good, interesting, nice, peculiar, special, strange, unusual, weird, wonderful**

## **6. About can mean in all directions.**

**Pattern 1** **motion verb** + *about* + **noun**

*We wandered **about** town for a few hours.*

**Pattern 2** **motion verb** + *about* (**adverb**)

*The baby crawls **about** the house.*

Verbs commonly used with these patterns:

**crawl, go, jump, look, move, poke, run, walk, wander**

## **7. About (adverb) can mean almost.**

**Pattern** *be* + *about* + **adjective**

*She is **about** ready.*

Adjectives commonly used after *about*:

**complete, done, finished, perfect, ready, right, through**

## **Expressions**

**about + infinitive** ready to

*The show is **about to begin**.*

**to be about time** an expression of annoyance that a person or thing has arrived late.

*"It's **about time** you got here," said the mother when her daughter came home late.*

**to have an air about one** to seem uncaring or unfriendly

*That new guy **has an air about him**.*

**not about** (adverb) + **infinitive** not willing to

*I'm **not about to sign** that agreement.*

*They're **not about to go** home early.*

**about face**

1. (verb) a military command to turn halfway around, and face the opposite direction

*The sergeant ordered, "**About face!**"*

*He told his men **to about face**.*

2. (noun) a complete change of opinion

*He did **an about face** when he learned the facts.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**bring about** (separable) cause

*The storm **brought about** problems.*

*The storm **brought** them **about**.*

**come about** (intransitive) happen

*How did that situation **come about**?*

**to get about** (intransitive) to be able to walk

*He is ninety years old, and he **gets about** very well.*

**to find out about** (nonseparable) to get information or news about something

*When did **you find out about** the accident?*

## PRACTICE

1-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. This \_\_\_\_\_ is about dogs.  
           airplane                      house                      story                      car
2. There was a \_\_\_\_\_ about my report.  
           complaint                      traffic accident                      secretary                      police officer
3. He always \_\_\_\_\_ about his problems.  
           drives                      runs                      jokes                      studies
4. We need to \_\_\_\_\_ about the law.  
           try                      learn                      work                      study
5. They \_\_\_\_\_ us about the accident.  
           learned                      finished                      told                      arrested
6. Her sister was \_\_\_\_\_ about my mistake.  
           crazy                      unkind                      silly                      ridiculous
7. The students are \_\_\_\_\_ about the field trip.  
           good                      bad                      silly                      excited
8. I have about \_\_\_\_\_ in my pocket.  
           my lesson                      my keys                      twenty dollars                      nothing
9. We are about \_\_\_\_\_.  
           learning                      the trip                      finished                      read
10. Her clothes were \_\_\_\_\_ about the bedroom.  
           ironed                      scattered                      washed                      bought

**1-2. Use an expression with *about* to express the following:**

1. We are not willing to go there.
2. She changed her mind completely.

**1-3. Use *about* in a phrasal verb to express the following:**

1. The president's announcement caused riots in the street.
2. Is your great-grandmother able to walk by herself?



## UNIT 2:

# Above

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Above can mean **in or at a higher place**.

**Pattern 1** *be + above + noun*

*A dark cloud **was above** the house.*

**Pattern 2** *verb + noun + above + noun*

*Let's hang the picture **above** the sofa.*

Verbs commonly used before *above*:

**arrange, carry, hang, hold, keep, place, put, set**

#### 2. Above can mean **at a higher level, value, or rank**.

*Her blood pressure is **above** normal.*

*The children in her class are all **above** average.*

*In the navy, a captain is **above** a commander.*

#### 3. Above indicates that a person is **too good** to commit the stated negative action.

**Pattern 1** *be + above + noun*

*The policeman is **above** cruelty.*

Nouns often used after *above*:

**cruelty, dishonesty, meanness, murder, perjury, theft, treason**

**Pattern 2** *be + above + verb in gerund form*

*He may be poor, but he is **above** stealing.*

Gerunds often used with this meaning:

**breaking the law, cheating, gossiping, lying, robbing, snooping, stealing**

As other parts of speech:

**Above** used as an adverb can indicate something **written earlier** in a book, article, or other document.

*Please see the instructions above.*

**Above** used as an adjective describes something written earlier.

*Please follow the **above** instructions.*

## Expressions

**up above** (adverb) in heaven

*Our dear grandmother is now in peace up above.*

**above and beyond the call of duty** action that is more or greater than what is expected of a person

*My teacher's help after school was **above and beyond the call of duty**.*

**aboveboard** completely honest and open; legal

*Our negotiations with the company were **aboveboard**.*

**above the law** exempt from restrictions of the law

*People in power sometimes believe they are **above the law**.*

## PRACTICE

**2-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.**

- [illegible]

**2-2. Use an expression with *above* to express the following:**

1. The policeman's help was extra special.
2. Even the president has to obey the law.

## UNIT 3:

# Across

### Basic Meanings

1. **Across** indicates the direction of **movement from one side of an area to the other.**

**Pattern** motion verb + *across* + noun

*The girl ran **across** the yard.*

Verbs often used before *across*:

**crawl, drive, go, limp, move, ride, run, swim, walk**

2. **Across** can mean **on the other side of** a place.

**Pattern** verb + *across* + noun

*My friend lives **across** the street.*

3. **Across from** means **opposite or facing.**

**Pattern 1** verb + *across from* + noun

*My assistant's office is **across from** mine.*

*My secretary sits **across from** me.*

**Pattern 2** verb + *across* + noun + **from** + noun

*My assistant's office is **across** the hall **from** mine.*

4. **Across** and **all across** mean **in every area of.**

*People **across** the world are using the Internet.*

*There is a heat wave **all across** the country.*

### Related Expression

**across the board** including everyone or everything

*Everyone got a raise in salary: there was a wage increase of 3 percent **across the board**.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**come across** (nonseparable) find something unexpectedly

*I **came across** this old picture of you when I was looking for some documents.*

**come across** (intransitive) be received by an audience

*The banquet speaker was not sure how well he **came across**.*

**run across** (nonseparable) to find something unexpectedly

*I **ran across** a letter you wrote to me when we were children.*

**get** (something) **across to** (separable) make something understood

*The young girl tried **to get it across** to her boyfriend that she was not ready to get married.*

## PRACTICE

### 3-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ across the lake.

walk

ride

run

swim

2. I can walk to the bank; it's just across the \_\_\_\_\_ from my house.

town

street

country

state

3. In our school building, the gym is across from the \_\_\_\_\_.

library

street

bank

bedroom

4. Wildfires are burning all across the \_\_\_\_\_.

bank

library

state

gym

### 3-2. Use an expression with *across* to express the following:

1. I found this recipe in my mother's cookbook.
2. Her brother tried to make her understand that she should be quiet.
3. I hope my message is clear to the audience.

## UNIT 4:

# After

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. After means **later than** or **following**.

**Pattern 1** *be* + **after** + noun

*The reception is **after** the wedding ceremony.*

**Pattern 2** **after** + gerund form of verb + noun

***After** finishing your homework, you can watch television.*

Used as a conjunction with related meaning:

**Pattern 1** **after** + subject noun + verb

***After** you finish your homework, you can watch television.*

**Pattern 2** subject + verb + **after** + subject + verb

*The boss left **after** I came in.*

#### 2. After can mean **lower in value or rank**.

*That school's athletes placed **after** ours in the playoffs.*

#### 3. After can mean **in pursuit of**.

**Pattern** verb + **after** + noun

*The cat ran **after** the mouse.*

Verbs often used before *after*:

**be, come, go, run**

#### 4. After can mean **because of**.

**Pattern** adjective . . . + **after** + noun

*He was mad at her **after** her behavior at the party.*

Typical nouns used after *after*:

**attitude, behavior, failure, kindness, manners, outburst, reaction, success**

## 5. After can mean in spite of.

**Pattern** *after* + verb in gerund form

*They never got married, **after** dating for years.*

***After** reading this article three times, I still don't understand it.*

## 6. After can mean in the style of.

**Pattern** noun + *after* + noun

*The school play was a drama **after** Shakespeare.*

## 7. After can indicate continuously.

**Pattern** time period + *after* + same time period

*The man waited night **after** night for his telephone to ring.*

*Life got harder year **after** year.*

*His mother told him time **after** time to clean up his room.*

Nouns often used with this meaning:

**day, hour, month, night, time, week, year**

## Expressions

**after all**

1. in spite of what happened; nevertheless

*Our best player got hurt in the first quarter, but we played hard and won the game **after all**.*

2. as a justification

*Of course I am tired; **after all**, I have been working for twelve hours.*

**after all is said and done**; eventually

*I know you feel bad now, but you will be glad about this **after all is said and done**.*

**after one's own heart** especially appreciated

*Her mother always serves us chocolate cake; she is a woman **after my own heart**.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**come after** (nonseparable) pursue

*When I saw him, I ran; but he **came after** me.*

**look after** (nonseparable) take care of something or somebody

*She **looks after** our baby on weekends.*

**name after** (separable) give a baby the name of someone special

*They **named** the baby **after** his grandfather.*

**take after** (nonseparable) be similar to an older relative

*The baby **takes after** his father.*

## PRACTICE

### 4-1. Choose the best word for each blank.

1. I did my homework after I \_\_\_\_\_.

read the  
instructions

went to sleep

graduated

finished college

2. My name is last on the list. My name is after \_\_\_\_\_.

my teacher

your name

your sister

Mary

3. That dog always runs after \_\_\_\_\_.

the school

the school bus

morning

meetings

4. After \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish in Mexico for six weeks, she still doesn't speak it.

studies

studied

studying

was studying

5. She works day after \_\_\_\_\_ in order to pay her bills.

year

month

hour

day

### 4-2. Use an expression with *after* to express the following:

1. This course is very difficult, but when we are finished, we will be happy.

2. Even though David didn't study for the test, he got a good grade.

### 4-3. Use *after* in a phrasal verb to express the following:



1. She looks a lot like her dad.
2. The baby's name is Susan. Her grandmother's name is Susan.
3. The babysitter takes care of the children on Thursday afternoons.

## UNIT 5:

# Against

### Basic Meanings

1. **Against** means **touching** something or somebody for support.

**Pattern 1** verb + *against* + noun

*The man was leaning **against** his car.*

Typical verbs used before *against*:

**hang, lean, lie, rest, sleep**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *against* + noun

*They held the mirror **against** the wall.*

Typical verbs used before *against*:

**butt, hold, keep, lay, lean, place, pull, put, rest, set**

2. **Against** means **touching forcibly**.

**Pattern** noun + verb + *against* + noun

*The rain beat **against** the window.*

Verbs often used before *against*:

**bang, beat, crash, crush, heave, hit, knock, push, splash, throw, thrust**

3. **Against** means **in opposition to**.

**Pattern** noun + verb + *against* + noun

*The mayor was **against** the idea of a new day-care center.*

*Stealing is **against** the law.*

*Our senator voted **against** that bill.*

Typical verbs used before *against*:

**act, argue, campaign, debate, fight, go, move, play, vote, work**

Nouns often used after *against*:

**action, bill, concept, enemy, force, idea, law, nomination, orders, plan, precepts, principles, proposal, regulations, religion, rules, suggestion, teachings, team, wishes**

#### **4. Against can mean toward a force in the opposite direction.**

**Pattern** verb + *against* + *the* + noun

*Sailing was rough yesterday; we sailed **against** the wind all day.*

Typical verbs used before *against*:

**drive, fight, go, move, run, sail, struggle, swim, walk**

Nouns often used after *against*:

**current, flow, force, tide, wind**

#### **5. Against can mean to the disadvantage of.**

**Pattern** noun + *be* + *against* + noun

*You may not get that job because your age **is against** you.*

Typical nouns before *be against*:

**age, background, height, inexperience, nationality, youth**

#### **6. Against can mean in contrast to.**

*It is hard to see your black necklace **against** that dark dress.*

#### **7. Against can mean in defense of.**

**Pattern** verb + noun + *against* + noun

*They vaccinated the children **against** whooping cough.*

*Their heavy coats protect them **against** the cold.*

Typical verbs before *against*:

**guard, lock up, protect, seal, vaccinate**

#### **8. Against can mean in partial payment of.**

**Pattern** noun + *against* + noun

*Enclosed is a check for one hundred dollars **against** my bill.*

Typical nouns after *against*:

**balance, bill, charges, debt, loan**

## Expressions

**against all odds/with all odds against one** having very little chance of success

*Team A was less experienced than Team B, but they won the game **against all odds**.*

*Many people come to this country and become successful with **all odds against them**.*

**against traffic** in the opposite direction of

*I drive **against traffic** because I live in the city and I work in the suburbs.*

**go against the grain** seem very wrong

*Cheating on your test really goes **against the grain**.*

**have two strikes against one** be at a strong disadvantage (In baseball, a player is eliminated after three strikes.)

*When you are poor and sick, **you have two strikes against you**.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**be up against** (nonseparable) be faced with opposition, trouble, or hard work

*My friend **is up against** a lot of problems.*

*When he started his own business, he had no idea what he **was up against**.*

## PRACTICE

### 5-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. The tired traveler was resting against his \_\_\_\_\_.

wallet

suitcase

handkerchief

money

2. It was hard, because we had to swim against the \_\_\_\_\_.

current

beach

pool

fish

3. She wasn't accepted on the team because she was too young; her \_\_\_\_\_ was against her.

sister

parents

age

teacher

4. The wind crashed against our \_\_\_\_\_.

teacher

feet

basement

windows

5. That dark bow doesn't show up against your \_\_\_\_\_.

dark hair

light hair

red lipstick

eyeshadow

6. We finally paid off \$500 against our \_\_\_\_\_.

checks

loan

bank

lawyer

7. The children were vaccinated against \_\_\_\_\_.

smoking

drug abuse

the flu

homework

8. My representative in Congress voted against \_\_\_\_\_.

gun control

global warming

disease

weather

**5-2. Use an expression with *against* to express the following:**

1. It seems wrong that teacher salaries are so low.
2. They became prosperous, even though they began with nothing.
3. We are playing the state champions tomorrow night.

## UNIT 6:

# Ahead Of

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Ahead of means **closer to a destination than** or **in front of**.

*My friend arrived first, and was **ahead of** me in line.*

#### 2. Ahead of means **before**.

*You are in a hurry; please go **ahead of** me.*

#### 3. Ahead of can mean **more advanced than**.

*Because he was absent for two weeks, the other students in his class are **ahead of** him.*

### Phrasal Verbs

**get ahead** (intransitive) succeed

*She has struggled all her life to **get ahead**.*

**get ahead of** (nonseparable) advance faster or further than someone else

*They are rivals, always competing to **get ahead of** each other.*

**go ahead** (intransitive) do it; begin now

*I asked for permission, and they told me to **go ahead**.*

### PRACTICE

#### 6-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. He is ahead of me because I got here \_\_\_\_\_.

first

before

late

early

2. The other students are ahead of me because I missed \_\_\_\_\_.  
my mother                      five classes                      five problems                      the baseball game

**6-2. Use an expression with *ahead* to express the following:**

1. We asked if we could look around, and they said yes.
2. They were just trying to earn a little more money.
3. His brother is trying to be better than he is at tennis.

## UNIT 7:

# Along

### Basic Meanings

1. **Along** means **following the boundary** of something.

**Pattern** verb + *along* + noun

*We walked **along** the water's edge at the beach last night.*

Typical verbs before *along*:

**jog, run, stroll, walk**

2. **Along with** means **together**.

**Pattern** verb + *along with* + noun

*He used to sing **along with** me.*

Typical verbs used before *along with*:

**hum, play, run, sing, walk, work**

### Expression

Used as an adverb:

**all along** the whole past time

*They have been enemies **all along**.*

### Phrasal Verbs

**get along** (intransitive) live together in harmony

*She and her old roommate didn't **get along**.*

**get along with** (nonseparable) to live in harmony with someone

*I hope she **gets along with** her new roommate.*



## PRACTICE

### 7-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. She walked along the \_\_\_\_\_ to be sure she didn't get lost.

parking lot

shopping center

path

ocean

2. When you \_\_\_\_\_ along with me, it's easier.

complain

work

worry

ask questions

### 7-2. Use an expression with *along* to express the following:

1. You thought we were angry, but we were just pretending the whole time.

### 7-3. Use a phrasal verb with *along* to express the following:

1. It's important to have a good relationship with your classmates.

## UNIT 8

# Among

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Among can mean **surrounded by**.

**Pattern** verb + *among* + plural (three or more) noun

*They camped in the woods **among** the trees.*

#### 2. Among can mean **with each other**.

**Pattern** verb + *among* + plural (three or more) noun

*The children quarreled **among** themselves.*

Typical verbs before *among*:

**argue, celebrate, debate, discuss something, fight, play, share something, talk**

#### 3. Among can mean **to the individuals in a group**.

**Pattern** verb + *among* + plural (three or more) noun

*They distributed the flyers **among** the students.*

Typical verbs before *among*:

**distribute, hand out, pass out**

#### 4. Among can mean **included in a group**.

*Your friends are **among** the survivors.*

#### 5. Among can indicate **many of a group**.

*Latin dancing is popular **among** the college students.*

## PRACTICE

### 8-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. We need to discuss this among \_\_\_\_\_.  
them                      themselves                      ourselves                      yourself
2. Her son is among the \_\_\_\_\_.  
school                      captain                      loser                      winners
3. It's pleasant to be in the meadow among the \_\_\_\_\_.  
mud                      rain                      flowers                      spring

## UNIT 9:

# Around

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Around means following a boundary, in a circular direction.

**Pattern** motion verb + *around* + noun

*We walked around the block.*

Verbs commonly used before *around*:

**drive, fly, race, ride, run, skip, travel, walk**

Nouns commonly used after *around*:

**block, building, house, room, track, world**

#### 2. Around indicates movement in a circular direction in place.

**Pattern** verb + *around (on)*

*The earth spins **around on** its axis as it travels around the sun.*

Typical verbs used before *around*:

**spin, turn, whirl**

#### 3. Around means enclosing.

**Pattern** verb + noun + *around* + noun

*The teacher drew a circle **around** each mistake.*

*The rancher put a rope **around** the cow's neck.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

**draw, fasten, put, tie, wrap**

#### 4. (All) around means in all areas of.

*There is crime **all around** this city.*

**5. (All) around can mean on all sides of.**

*People were screaming **all around** me.*

**6. Around means on another side of.**

*The bank is **around** the corner. Their farm is just **around** the bend.*

**7. Around (adverb) means approximately.**

**Pattern** *around* + number

*We have **around** twenty dollars in our pockets.*

*I'll see you at **around** three o'clock.*

**8. (All) around can mean in many directions, randomly**

**Pattern** motion verb + *around* + noun

*The new teacher looked **around** the room.*

Verbs often used before *around*:

**drive, flit, go, jump, look, march, move, play, run, search, shop, snoop, walk, wander**

**9. Around can mean do nothing.**

**Pattern** verb + *around* + place

*Those teenagers just hang **around** the mall with nothing to do.*

Verbs used before *around*:

**drag, fool, goof, hang, lie, lurk, mope, sit**

**Expressions**

**turn around** (adverb) face the opposite direction

*You are going east; to go west, you have to **turn around**.*

**turn something around** (adverb) reverse the position of something

*Turn your chair **around** and talk to me.*

**around back** at the back of a building

*Go **around back** to pick up your merchandise.*

**go around the bend** be crazy

*I am so busy, I think I am **going around the bend**.*

**give someone the runaround** avoid taking action by giving long explanations

*When I tried to return my broken air conditioner, the store manager **gave me the runaround**.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**get around** (intransitive) often visit a lot of places and meet a lot of people

*He seems to know everybody; he really **gets around**.*

**get around to** (nonseparable) finally make the effort to do something

*One day I will **get around to** cleaning out my files.*

**kick somebody around** (separable) mistreat someone by controlling him or her

*He left that job because the boss always **kicked him around**.*

**kick something around** (separable) consider the pros and cons of an idea

*We are **kicking around** the idea of moving to Florida.*

**kid around** (intransitive) have fun

*Our babysitter is great because she likes to **kid around** with us.*

**show someone around** (separable) take someone on a tour of a place

*He **showed me around** the campus when I first arrived.*

**hang around with** someone (nonseparable) often be with someone

*She **hangs around with** a boy who lives up the street.*

**run around with** someone (nonseparable) often go out with someone

*She is **running around with** a new group of friends.*

## PRACTICE

### 9-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. After dinner, the children like to go outside and run around the \_\_\_\_\_.

mountain

road

horse

house

2. There is global warming all around the \_\_\_\_\_.

world

mountain

street

river

3. You can't see the school, but it is just around the \_\_\_\_\_.

road

corner

world

country

4. She wrapped a \_\_\_\_\_ around her neck.

scarf

hat

cushion

sweater

5. She has been \_\_\_\_\_ around the house all day.

laughing

pushing

moping

standing

6. The detective came in and \_\_\_\_\_ around the bedroom.

talked

sat

snooped

stopped

7. I have around \_\_\_\_\_ in my pocket.

twenty-five dollars

notes

wallet

maps

8. I'll meet you at around \_\_\_\_\_.

the corner

my ankle

the house

five o'clock

**9-2. Use an expression with *around* to express the following:**

1. Drive to the back of the building.
2. You are going in the wrong direction.
3. He keeps asking her out, and she keeps saying she is too busy.

**9-3. Use a phrasal verb with *around* to express the following:**

1. She seems to know everybody.
2. Can you give me a tour of the campus?
3. We are just staying home and doing nothing.
4. His older brother bullies him.

## UNIT 10:

# As

### Basic Meaning

#### 1. As means in the role of.

**Pattern 1** verb + *as* + noun

*She is a trained teacher, but she works **as** a secretary in our office.*

Typical verbs used before *as*:

**act, serve, substitute, volunteer, work**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *as* + noun

*We have selected you **as** the captain of the team.*

Typical verbs:

**choose, elect, nominate, pick, select, use**

### Expression

**As for me** regarding me

*They all went to the movies; **as for me**, I stayed home.*

### PRACTICE

#### 10-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. He is a student, but he \_\_\_\_\_ as a volunteer on weekends.

studies

works

sleeps

goes to the movie

2. They chose me to serve as the \_\_\_\_\_ of the team.

brother

action

leader

last



## UNIT 11:

# At

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. At can indicate location

**Pattern 1** *at + the + place within a city or town*

*The women are **at the** supermarket.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

**apartment, bus stop, factory, hospital, hotel, house, mall, office, park, parking lot, restaurant, station, store, theater, university**

**Pattern 2** *at + an address*

*She lives **at** 3757 North 52nd Street, apartment 10.*

*You can contact him by e-mail **@xyz.com**.*

(The symbol @ is pronounced “at.”)

**Pattern 3** *at + the + place within another place*

*He was waiting in the room **at the** door.*

*He likes to sit in her apartment **at the** window facing the park.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

**counter, desk, table, window**

#### 2. At indicates a place of attendance.

**Pattern 1** *be + at + place or meal of regular attendance*

*The children **are at** school.*

*We aren't allowed to watch television when we **are at** dinner.*

Nouns used with this pattern:

**church, class, home, practice, school, work**

**breakfast, lunch, dinner**

**Pattern 2** *be + at + noun of event*

*They **are at** the movies.*

*She **is at** a meeting.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

**breakfast, brunch, celebration, concert, conference, dance, debate, dinner, forum, function, funeral, game, lecture, luncheon, meeting, movies, parade, party, play, program, reading, reunion, show, wedding**

**3. At can indicate in the direction of; toward.**

**Pattern 1** *verb + at + noun*

*The teacher smiled **at** the new girl.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

**aim, frown, glare, grab, grin, growl, hit, howl, laugh, leer, look, rush, shoot, shout, slap, smile, snatch, stare, swear, swing, wink, yell**

**Pattern 2** *verb + noun + at + noun*

*The small boy threw a rock **at** the window.*

Typical verbs:

**swing, throw, toss**

**4. At is used to express time.**

**Pattern** *at + specific time*

*We are leaving **at** four thirty.*

*They went home **at** midnight.*

*We always eat lunch **at** noon.*

**Related Expressions**

**at first** when something started

***At first** we thought this hike would be easy.*

**at last** finally

*After that long drive, we are home **at last**.*

**at length** for a long time, thoroughly

*We discussed that topic **at length** at our meeting.*

**at night** when it is night

*I always read or study **at night**.*

**at once** immediately (see also *number at a time*, below)

*We must pack up and leave **at once**.*

**at present** now

***At present** they are sleeping.*

**at the beginning** at first, when something started

***At the beginning** we tried to go too fast.*

**at the end** when something ended

***At the end** of the story, everybody was happy.*

**at the moment** at present, now

*I am very busy **at the moment**.*

**(number) at a time** ratio per instance or unit

*The tall boy liked to go up the steps two or three **at a time**.*

**at once** several things together

*Try to learn one step at a time, rather than three or four **at once**.*

## 5. At can mean **busy using** something; **working**.

### **Pattern 1** *at + the + noun*

*I have been **at the** computer all day.*

Nouns often used after *at the*:

**cash register, computer, fax machine, ironing board, sewing machine, stove, (steering) wheel**

### **Pattern 2** *be + at + work*

***be + at + it***

*You must not bother him; he **is at work**.*

*He **has been at it** for four hours.*

## 6. At can indicate a **condition**.

### **Pattern** *be + at + o noun*

*Those two countries **have been at peace** for ten years.*

Nouns used after *at*:

attention, ease, peace, rest, risk, war

## 7. At can indicate reaction.

**Pattern 1** adjective of state + *at* + noun

*We were shocked at the condition of the classrooms.*

Typical adjectives used before *at*:

aghast, amazed, astonished, astounded, indignant, shocked, speechless, surprised, thrilled, upset

**Pattern 2** verb + *at* + noun

*The crowd rejoiced at the good news.*

Verbs commonly used before *at*:

cheer, grumble, guess, hint, hoot, laugh, rebel, rejoice, snort, tremble

## 8. At indicates a degree of skill.

**Pattern 1** adjective + *at* + noun

*Your son is good at tennis, but not very good at hockey.*

**Pattern 2** adjective + *at* + verb in gerund form

*That couple is really great at dancing the tango.*

Typical adjectives used before *at*:

bad, excellent, good, great, lousy, skilled, terrible

## 9. At can indicate a rate or level

**Pattern 1** *at* + noun indicating price

*At the market they are selling apples at sixty-nine cents a pound.*

*I wish we could buy mangoes at that price.*

*Her husband tries to buy everything at a discount.*

**Pattern 2** @\* + number + *a* + noun indicating a unit of measurement

*They are selling apples @ 69¢ a lb.*

**Pattern 3** *at* + noun indicating level of age or distance

*You shouldn't work so hard at your age.*

*He was still singing at (the age of) eighty.*

*We can't see very well **at** this distance.*  
*The plane was flying **at** three thousand feet.*

## Related Expressions

**at a distance** from far away

*I saw the new baby **at a distance**, and he looked beautiful.*

**at arm's length** not close

*I try to stay **at arm's length** from him to avoid an argument.*

**Pattern 4** **at + noun indicating level of speed**

*She shouldn't drive **at** that speed.*

***At** twenty-five miles an hour on the freeway, she should get a ticket.*

**EXCEPTION: When speed is expressed in numbers after a verb, *at* is omitted.**

*That driver is going eighty miles an hour.*

*He drove sixty miles an hour the whole way home.*

## 10. **At** can indicate the highest possible **degree** in value.

**Pattern** **at + superlative adjective used as noun**

***At best** she is an adequate typist.*

*She works **at least** nine hours every day.*

*You should be here by five o'clock **at the latest**.*

Superlatives commonly used with this pattern:

**best, least, most, worst**

**the earliest, the latest**

## Expressions

**at the sound, thought, or prospect of** when one experiences

*She gets nervous **at the sound of** his voice.*

*We shudder **at the thought of** moving again.*

*He is **excited at the prospect of** going to South America.*

**make a pass at** indicate romantic interest toward

*The young man **made a pass at** the beautiful woman he met at the party.*

**keep at it** not stop working

*He wanted to go home, but he **kept at it** until the work was finished.*

**be sick at heart** be sad

*We **were sick at heart** when the dog died.*

**be an old hand at** be very experienced with

*Our professor **is an old hand at** government operations.*

**be at an advantage** be in a better-than-average position

*He **is at an advantage** because his family has influence.*

**be at a disadvantage** be in a less-than-average position

*When you are a newcomer at work, you **are at a disadvantage**.*

**down at the heels** shabby

*His brother looked **down at the heels** when he was without work.*

**at one's mercy** in someone else's power

*I was **at the intruder's mercy** because he had a gun in my back.*

**at one's discretion** someone's own decision

*We can go home when we are ready, **at our own discretion**.*

**at that**

1. at that point, not any more or further

*You did a good job; leave it **at that**.*

2. illogically

*We got lost, and in our hometown **at that!***

**be getting at** meaning, but not saying

*The manager didn't exactly say his employer had been dishonest, but we all knew what he **was getting at**.*

## Phrasal Verb

**pick at** something (nonseparable) agitate with one's fingernails

*The child **picked at** the scab on his knee.*

## PRACTICE

11-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. Stella isn't here now. She's at \_\_\_\_\_.

the school

school

store

movies

2. He lives at \_\_\_\_\_.

Oak Street, 123

123 Oak Street

Street Oak, 123

Oak Street, #123

3. The old man \_\_\_\_\_ at the nurse.

smiled

walked

talked

threw

4. She has been at the \_\_\_\_\_ all day.

bed

chair

computer

lamp

5. The two countries are fighting. They are at \_\_\_\_\_.

war

enemies

jungle

battlefield

6. Don't be late. Be here by six o'clock, at the \_\_\_\_\_.

earliest

soonest

latest

tomorrow

7. Please don't drive at \_\_\_\_\_.

speed

75 miles per hour

so fast

highway

8. They are selling bananas at \_\_\_\_\_.

on sale

grocery store

40 cents per pound

supermarket

9. The airplane was flying at \_\_\_\_\_.

wind

clouds

low

3,000 feet

10. We were upset at \_\_\_\_\_.

the news

the newspaper

newspaper

news

### 11-2. Use an expression with *at* to express the following:

1. They are working now.
2. Don't try to do everything together.
3. We finally arrived.
4. When we first arrived, we were happy.
5. He has a better chance than the others.
6. I stay away from her.
7. He keeps talking, but I don't know what he means.
8. He showed romantic interest in me.

### 11-3. Use a phrasal verb with *at* to express the following:

1. The child scratched the scab on his knee, trying to take it off.

\* @ is pronounced *at*. This meaning and the one for an email address (section 11.1) are the only acceptable uses of this symbol.



## UNIT 12:

# Back To/Back From

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Back to indicates return.

**Pattern 1** verb + *back to* + noun of place or time

*Please go **back to** the beginning of your story.*

*The children went **back to** the museum to see the new exhibit.*

Verbs often used before *back to*:

**crawl, drive, fly, go, hark, jump, look, move, race, run, think, walk**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *back to* + noun

*We took the train **back to** the city.*

Typical verbs:

**bring, carry, drive, pull, push, take**

#### 2. Back from indicates return to a starting place from a different place.

**Pattern** verb + *back from* + noun of place

*I'll be **back (home) from** the store in about ten minutes.*

*We can't leave until your mother gets **back from** her trip.*

Typical verbs before *back from*:

**be, come, drive, fly, get, move, run, walk**

#### 3. Back indicates a return of something.

**Pattern 1** verb + noun + *back* (+ *to* + noun)

*Please give this plate **back to** your mother.*

*I took the dress **back to** the store because it didn't fit.*

## bring, give, pay, send, take

*Please get my suit **back from** the cleaners.*

*I called you **back** when I got home.*

## call, bring, pay, put, take

*We wanted to see the action, but they made us **get back.***

*After he was fired, he tried to **get back at** his boss.*

*As soon as I know the figures, I will **get back to you**.*

*He hurt my feelings, but I **got him back** by hanging up the phone.*

*With a lower salary he had to **cut back**.*

*With a lower salary he had to **cut back on** entertainment.*

throw                      hit                      speak                      call

**12-2. Use a phrasal verb with *back* to express the following:**

1. She stepped in front of the crowd, but the officer told her to move out of the way.
2. She took my wallet, and I wanted revenge.
3. I will call you when I have the information.
4. We need to spend less money on movies.

## UNIT 13:

# Before

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Before means **earlier than**.

*We must leave **before** four o'clock.*

#### 2. Before can mean **in a more important position than**.

*She is so ambitious that she puts her job **before** her family.*

#### 3. Before can mean **facing**.

*The handsome singer had many adoring fans **before** him.*

#### 4. Before can mean **in the future**.

*The bride smiled as she thought of the happiness **before** her.*

#### 5. Before can mean **in the presence of**.

*I was told to appear **before** the judge.*

### PRACTICE

#### 13-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. The speaker had \_\_\_\_\_ before him.

a lot of people      a lot of money      a lot of time      a lot of cars

2. It takes an hour to get there. We have to arrive at five P.M., so we need to leave here before \_\_\_\_\_.

six P.M.

four P.M.

eight P.M.

midnight

3. When you go to traffic court, I hope you don't have to appear before \_\_\_\_\_.

the trial

the desk

the classroom

the judge

## UNIT 14:

# Behind

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Behind means in the rear of.

*The trash can is **behind** the chair.*

*My friend sits **behind** me in class.*

#### 2. Behind can mean less advanced than.

*Miss Thompson's class is studying lesson three; the other classes are studying lesson four. Miss Thompson's class is **behind** the other classes.*

#### 3. Behind can mean left in the past.

*He is rich now; all his financial problems are **behind** him.*

#### 4. Behind can mean late.

**behind schedule** later than usual

*The train is **behind schedule**.*

**behind in payments** late in making a regular payment

*She is always **behind in** her rent payments.*

#### 5. Behind can mean encouraging or supporting.

**Pattern** noun + **behind** + noun

*The successful man had an ambitious woman **behind** him.*

*Those candidates have a lot of money **behind** them.*

*There must be a greedy person **behind** this scheme.*

Typical nouns after *behind*:

**a person or people**

**idea, plan, plot, project, scheme**

## Expressions

**behind the scenes** not seen

*The lawyer knew all the facts about the case; he had a lot of help **behind the scenes**.*

**behind the times** old-fashioned/old-school

*Her dad still uses a typewriter; he is really **behind the times**.*

## PRACTICE

### 14-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. Maria sits in Row 6. Estéban sits in Row 7. I sit in Row 8. Estéban sits behind \_\_\_\_.

me Maria the teacher him

2. Miss Evans's class is reading chapter eight. Mrs. Martínez's class is reading chapter ten. Our class is reading chapter seven. Our class is behind \_\_\_\_.

Mrs. Martínez's class the school Mrs. Martínez's and Miss Evans's classes Miss Evans's class

3. Who is behind this ridiculous \_\_\_\_?

train                      idea                      house                      car

4. He is happy now. His \_\_\_\_ are behind him.

problems                      cars                      plans                      ideas

### 14-2. Use an expression with *behind* to express the following:

1. The bus is later than usual.
2. You are very old-fashioned.

## UNIT 15:

# Below

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Below means **lower in number or degree than**.

*Your body temperature is 97 degrees Fahrenheit; it is **below** normal, which is 98.6.*

#### 2. Below can mean **lower in rank or level than**.

*In our company the supervisors are **below** the directors.*

*Our offices are on the fourth floor; theirs are **below** ours, on the third floor.*

### Expression

**below the belt** unfairly, not according to the rules

*He pretended to be her friend, then applied for her job. That was really **below the belt**.*

### PRACTICE

#### 15-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. If your body temperature is 93 degrees Fahrenheit, it is below \_\_\_\_.

the belt

par

normal

the roof

2. My bedroom is on the third floor. My sister's bedroom is on the second floor. Her bedroom is below \_\_\_\_.

mine

herself

our parents'

the roof

#### 15-2. Use an expression with *below* to express the following:



1. It was unfair that my friend told my secret to everyone.

## UNIT 16:

# Beneath

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Beneath means **under and concealed by**.

*My glasses were **beneath** the newspaper.*

*The daffodils sprouted **beneath** the snow.*

#### 2. Beneath can mean **less worthy than**.

*Now that she is rich and famous, she thinks her family is **beneath** her.*

#### 3. Beneath can mean **unlikely, because of goodness or pride**.

**Pattern 1** *it + be + beneath + noun of person + infinitive*

*She was a little wild, but **it was beneath** her to commit a crime.*

Typical verbs after *beneath*:

**break the law, commit a crime, commit adultery, commit perjury, gossip, lie, murder, steal**

**Pattern 2** *noun/gerund form of verb + be + beneath + person*

*She was a little wild, but **committing a crime was beneath** her.*

Typical nouns before *be beneath*:

**adultery, breaking the law, committing a crime, forgery, lying, murder, stealing**

### PRACTICE

#### 16-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. He is famous, but arrogant; he thinks \_\_\_\_\_ are beneath him.

the class

everybody

other people

his brother

2. I finally found my phone. It was beneath my \_\_\_\_\_.

pillow

library

classroom

wall

3. I don't like him, but I think \_\_\_\_\_ is beneath him.

walking to school

cheating

taking a test

working

## UNIT 17:

# Beside

### Basic Meaning

#### 1. Beside means next to.

**Pattern** verb + *beside* + noun

*Please come over here and sit **beside** me.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

**be, kneel, lie (down), rest, sit (down), sleep, stand, stay, walk, work**

### Expressions

**beside the point** irrelevant

*He always wastes time at our meetings by talking about things that are **beside the point**.*

**beside oneself** extremely agitated

*My mother is **beside herself** because she doesn't know where my brother is.*

### PRACTICE

#### 17-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. My best friend likes to \_\_\_\_\_ beside me at school.

fight

go to school

talk

sit

2. He is dizzy; please \_\_\_\_\_ beside him.

run

sing

walk

work

#### 17-2. Use an expression with “beside” to express the following:

1. Her comment was on a different topic.

2. The teacher is very upset.

## UNIT 18:

# Besides

### Basic Meaning

#### 1. Besides means **excepting**.

*Everyone **besides** me is at the beach.*

### PRACTICE

#### 18-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ besides Cecelia are at school.

The girl

The girls

All the girls

The boy

2. Besides \_\_\_\_\_, I invited all my friends to the party.

my brothers

my games

my toys

my house

## UNIT 19:

# Between

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Between indicates separation of two things.

**Pattern** noun + *between* + noun

*My neighbor and I built a fence **between** our backyards.*

#### 2. Between can show connection of two places.

*Route 395 goes **between** New York and Washington, D.C.*

#### 3. Between can indicate a choice of.

**Pattern** verb + *between* + noun + *and* + noun

*You can have only one dessert, so please decide **between** cake and ice cream.*

Verbs often used before *between*:

**choose, decide, judge, pick, select**

#### 4. Between means not lower or higher in number.

*We have saved **between** three and four thousand dollars.*

*It is hot today. It must be **between** 80 and 85 degrees.*

#### 5. Between means from a time to another time.

*She will be away all weekend, so don't call her **between** Friday night and Monday morning.*

## 6. Between can mean shared by.

*We are on a diet, so we will have one piece of cake **between** us.  
They only had five dollars **between** them.*

## 7. Between can mean together.

*The newlyweds painted their new house **between** them.*

As an adverb:

## In between means at a middle point

*He isn't old or young; he is **in between**.*

## Expression

**between you and me confidentially**

*I don't like to spread gossip, but **between you and me**, they got married last week.*

## PRACTICE

**19-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.**

1. Is there is a \_\_\_\_\_ between your house and theirs?  
car                                  fence                                  dog                                  lamp
2. Ali has three dollars. I have two dollars. We have \_\_\_\_\_ dollars between us.  
four                                  six                                  ten                                  five
3. She is on vacation this week. She won't be at the office between \_\_\_\_\_.  
Thursday and                  Tuesday and                  Monday and Friday          Saturday and  
Sunday                          Saturday                                                                  Sunday
4. It's very cold today. The temperature is between \_\_\_\_\_ degrees.  
33 and 40                  50 and 60                  55 and 75                  80 and 90
5. That route goes from east to west. It goes between \_\_\_\_\_.  
New York and                  New York and                  Washington and                  New York and  
Florida                          California                          Boston



Boston

6. I like all the desserts. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ between ice cream and pie.

save

want

love

decide

**19-2. Use an expression with *between* to express the following:**

1. This is a secret, but I am not voting for that politician.

## UNIT 20:

# Beyond

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Beyond means **on the other side of**.

*Our street is **beyond** the traffic light.*

*If you are traveling west, New Mexico is **beyond** Texas.*

#### 2. Beyond means **past the limits of**.

**Pattern 1** *be + beyond + noun*

*The sick child **was beyond** help.*

*That situation **is beyond** my understanding.*

**Pattern 2** *be + adjective + beyond + noun*

*The palace **was beautiful beyond** description.*

Nouns commonly used after *beyond*:

**belief, comprehension, help, one's wildest dreams, salvation, saving, understanding**

#### 3. Beyond can mean **later than**.

**Pattern** *beyond + noun*

*The guests were having so much fun that they stayed well **beyond** midnight.*

*In this town nothing is open **beyond** ten o'clock.*

### Expressions

**beyond one** not understandable by someone

*This puzzle is **beyond me**.*

*That technical article was **beyond him**.*

**beyond the pale** totally unacceptable

*His rude jokes at that formal reception were **beyond the pale**.*

**the great beyond** (adverb) heaven

*She said there would be perfect peace in **the great beyond**.*

## PRACTICE

### 20-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. If you are traveling east from San Francisco, Philadelphia is beyond \_\_\_\_.

Chicago

New York

Washington

Miami

2. I don't understand this \_\_\_\_\_. It is beyond me.

homework

library

classroom

teacher

### 20-2. Use an expression with *beyond* to express the following:

1. His behavior was totally unacceptable.

## UNIT 21:

# But

### Basic Meaning

#### 1. But means **except**.

*She works every day **but** Friday.*

### PRACTICE

#### 21-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. They work six days a week. They work every day but \_\_\_\_\_.

Saturday and  
Sunday

Monday and  
Tuesday

Thursday and  
Saturday

Monday

## UNIT 22:

# By

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. By indicates an **actor, instrument, or cause**

**Pattern** *be* + **past participle** + *by* + **noun**

*The work **was** done **by** a carpenter.*

*The mark **was** made **by** a hammer.*

*The damage **was** caused **by** the storm.*

#### 2. By means **following the boundary of something; along**

*They walked **by** the side of the road.*

#### 3. By indicates a **method or way**.

**Pattern** **verb** + **(noun)** + *by* + **noun**

*She **made** a little money **by** begging.*

*We **sent** the letter **by** mail.*

*They **went** to the mountains **by** Route 66.*

#### 4. By can mean **according to** a form, period of time, packaging, weight, number, or amount

**Pattern** **verb** + **(noun)** + *by* + **the** + **noun**

*He makes his decisions **by the** rules.*

*She charges **by the** hour.*

*We buy eggs **by the** dozen.*

Typical nouns after *by the*:

**day, hour, month, week**

job, piece

bag, barrel, box, bucket, bushel, cup, drop, gallon, ounce, pint, pound, quart, ream, tablespoonful, teaspoonful

**5. By can mean not later than.**

*You must be here **by** 6 A.M. sharp.*

*I'm worried; they should have arrived **by** now.*

**6. By means near or next to.**

*His desk is **by** mine.*

*I hope you will stay **by** me.*

**7. By indicates multiplication, division, and square measurement.**

*We multiplied four **by** three. ( $4 \cdot 3 = 12$ )*

*They divided ten **by** two. ( $10 \div 2 = 5$ )*

*That room measures ten feet **by** twelve feet. It measures 120 square feet.*

**8. By can mean a lot of.**

**Pattern** *by + the + noun*

*He gets letters **by the** hundreds every day.*

Typical nouns used after *by the*:

**dozens, hundreds, thousands, truckload**

**9. By can indicate the extent of a win or a loss.**

*That horse won **by** a nose.*

*They lost the basketball game **by** three points.*

**Expressions**

**by the time** when

***By the time** you get up, I'll be in New York.*

**by a mile** by a lot; to a great extent

*We won the game **by a mile**.*

**by far** without question

*He is **by far** the strongest man here.*

**by all means** certainly

*You should **by all means** visit the art gallery.*

**(all) by oneself** alone; without help

*The children are at home **by themselves**.*

*The girl made the cake **all by herself**.*

**by day** during the day; **by night** during the night

*Most people work **by day** and sleep **by night**.*

**by chance** for no apparent reason

*I saw my teacher at the mall **by chance**.*

**by (any) chance** perhaps

*Do you **by any chance** have change for a dollar?*

**by the way** incidentally

***By the way** , my aunt is coming to visit next week. Why don't you come see her?*

**little by little** (adverb) slowly

*He practiced every day, and **little by little**, began to show improvement.*

**one by one** one at a time; **two by two** two at a time

***One by one** , she picked up the pearls from her broken necklace.*

*The schoolchildren walked to the museum, **two by two**, holding hands.*

**by profession** indicates one's job

*He is a teacher **by profession**.*

**by nature/by disposition** naturally

*She is generous **by nature**.*

*He is nervous **by disposition**.*

**by reputation** indicates common belief

*She is a good lawyer **by reputation**.*

**go by the board** be ignored

*Our suggestions for improving the company **went by the board**.*

**by and by** (adverb) one day, in the future

*We'll meet again, **by and by**.*

**by and large** (adverb) almost completely

*The company is doing well, **by and large**.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**do well by** (nonseparable) be responsible for someone's benefit

*She was a good mother; she **did well by** her children.*

**stand by** (intransitive) wait in hopes of success

*I didn't have a reservation, but I decided **to stand by**, and got on the flight.*

**stand by** (nonseparable) to support

*She **stood by** me when I was in trouble.*

**swear by** (nonseparable) have complete faith in the worth of something

*My mother **swears by** that cleaning product.*

**drop by** (intransitive) visit without notice

*Your friends **dropped by** this afternoon, but you weren't here.*

**drop by** (separable) to deliver

*A boy **dropped** this package **by** today.*

**get by** (intransitive) live, but with difficulty

*He's feeble, but he **gets by**.*

**go by** (nonseparable) pass in front of

*We **went by** your house last night.*

**put by** (separable) store

*She **put** her dreams **by** for a while.*

**run by** (separable) to tell in detail

*She **ran** her story **by** me several times this afternoon.*

## PRACTICE

### 22-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. Our new cabinet was built by an expert \_\_\_\_\_.

policeman

father

carpenter

tailor

2. The children must be home before dinner. They must be here by \_\_\_\_\_.

5 P.M.

noon

midnight

10 P.M.



3. Gasoline for a car is sold by the \_\_\_\_\_.

cup

pint

quart

gallon

4. The apartment measures 30 feet by 60 feet. It measures \_\_\_\_\_ square feet.

600

1,600

1,800

2,000

5. We earn extra money by \_\_\_\_\_.

studying

babysitting

eating

exercising

6. There are a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ by the side of the creek.

sand

rocks

mud

water

7. We won the game by \_\_\_\_\_.

three miles

a hundred

10 points

close

**22-2. Use an expression with *by* to express the following:**

1. You should certainly ask for help if you need it.
2. Her nature is to be kind.
3. Incidentally, don't forget the meeting next week.
4. Some people work at night, and sleep in the daytime.
5. Nobody was with her.
6. I found this old photo when I wasn't looking for it.
7. Do you know my father, perhaps?

**22-3. Use a phrasal verb with *by* to express the following:**

1. He supported me when I needed help.
2. Could you tell me that story again?
3. She lives, with difficulty.
4. Can we visit you this afternoon?
5. I pass your house on my way home from work.

## UNIT 23:

# Close To

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Close to means **near**.

*Your house is **close to** the metro station.*

*They are sitting **close to** each other.*

#### 2. Close to indicates a very friendly or intimate relationship.

*She is very **close to** her older sister.*

#### 3. Close to can mean **almost**.

*I wrote **close to** fifty invitations this morning.*

### PRACTICE

#### 23-1. Choose the word or words that best fill each blank.

1. Our teacher lives one block from our school. She lives close to \_\_\_\_\_.  
the bank                      downtown                      us                      work
2. They are twins. They are very close to \_\_\_\_\_.  
school                      work                      each other                      him
3. The exam was from 1 P.M. until 3:45 P.M. It lasted close to \_\_\_\_\_.  
two hours                      three hours                      an hour                      five hours

## UNIT 24:

# Despite/In Spite Of

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. **Despite** indicates **an illogical occurrence**.

*We had a good time **despite** the bad weather.*

#### 2. **In spite of** has the same meaning and usage as *despite*.

*We had a good time **in spite of** the bad weather.*

### PRACTICE

#### 24-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. He did a good job despite his \_\_\_\_\_.

lack of experience

expertise

good education

good manners

2. We arrived on time in spite of the \_\_\_\_\_.

street

traffic

parking lot

help

## UNIT 25:

# Down

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Down indicates movement from a higher place.

**Pattern** noun + verb + *down* + noun

*The rocks rolled **down** the mountain.*

Typical verbs used before *down*:

**come, fall, go, move, roll, run, slide, walk**

#### 2. Down means following the way of; along

**Pattern 1** noun + verb + *down* + noun

*The old man went **down** the road on foot.*

Typical verbs used before *down*:

**come, drive, go, move, run, skate, walk**

**Pattern 2** noun + verb + noun + *down* + noun

*The boys rode their bikes **down** the street this morning.*

Typical verbs before *down*:

**bring, carry, drive, move, pull, push, ride, take**

Typical nouns after *down*:

**freeway, highway, path, road, sidewalk, street, turnpike**

#### 3. Down indicates destruction.

**Pattern 1** noun + verb + *down* + noun

*The intruder broke **down** the door.*

Typical verbs used before *down*:

**blow, break, bring, burn, cut, strike, take, tear**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *down*

*The intruder broke the door **down**.*

## Expression

**upside down** turned so that the bottom is on top

*The cups go in the dishwasher **upside down**.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**back down** (intransitive) retreat

*The dog **backed down** when I called his name.*

**calm down** (separable) soothe; tranquilize

*We had to **calm** the children **down** after the excitement.*

**close down** (separable) stop business activity, temporarily or permanently

*We **close** the shop **down** at four o'clock every day.*

*They plan to **close** that business **down** for good.*

**come down with** (nonseparable) become sick

*She missed the picnic because she **came down with** the flu.*

**crack down on** (nonseparable) impose restrictions

*The police are **cracking down on** street violence.*

**let down** (separable) disappoint

*She **let** me **down** when she didn't help me with my party.*

**look down on** (nonseparable) feel superior to

*The older students tend to **look down on** the younger ones.*

**mark down** (separable) lower in price

*I bought this shirt after they **marked** it **down** to ten dollars.*

**put down** (separable) insult

*She shouldn't go out with him; he **puts** her **down** all the time.*

**run down** (separable) criticize negatively

*She always **runs** her hometown **down**.*

**shut down** (separable) turn off a computer; end a business

*She worked all night and didn't **shut** her computer **down** until morning.*

*They **shut** that shop **down** two years ago.*

**turn down** (separable) reject

*He got a job offer today but he is going to **turn it down**.*

**write down** (separable) put on paper for future reference

*She didn't know my phone number, so I **wrote it down** for her.*

## PRACTICE

### 25-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. The children like to \_\_\_\_\_ down the hill on their sleds.  
run                      walk                      slide                      crawl
2. They cut the \_\_\_\_\_ down with a saw.  
tree                      house                      school                      grass
3. He took the trash down to the \_\_\_\_\_ for collection.  
highway                      movies                      street                      party

### 25-2. Use an expression with *down* to express the following:

1. He hung the picture in the wrong direction.

### 25-3. Use a phrasal verb with *down* to express the following:

1. The government is imposing restrictions on homelessness.
2. I hope you don't get a cold.
3. Julia's mother will soothe her.
4. Please command your dog to retreat.
5. Please don't disappoint your teacher.
6. Are you going to reject the offer?
7. Let's buy the computer when the price is lower.
8. She feels superior to the newcomers.
9. It's a good idea to make a note of your passwords.
10. Stop criticizing me in front of your friends.

## UNIT 26:

# During

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. During indicates within a period of time.

*We slept **during** the day.*

*They practiced basketball **during** the summer.*

#### 2. During means at the same time as another event.

*I slept **during** the football game.*

*They lived in the north **during** the war.*

### PRACTICE

#### 26-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. She needs to \_\_\_\_\_ during the day because she works at night.

work

sleep

go to parties

smoke

2. What are you going to do during the \_\_\_\_\_?

office

field

football game

soccer goal

## UNIT 27:

# Except

### Basic Meaning

#### 1. Except means excluding.

*Everyone went to the movies **except** me.*

*We work every day **except** Sunday.*

### PRACTICE

#### 27-1. Choose the best word or words for blank.

1. My brothers are called Abe, Brian, Carlos, and David. I saw Brian, David, and Carlos last night. I saw all of my brothers except \_\_\_\_\_.

David

Carlos

Brian

Abe

2. We go to school on weekdays. We go to school every day except \_\_\_\_\_.

Saturdays and  
Sundays

Mondays and  
Fridays

Tuesdays and  
Wednesdays

Tuesdays and  
Thursdays



## UNIT 28:

# Far From

## Basic Meanings

- 1. Far (away) from** indicates a great distance between places or people.

*Their office isn't **far (away)** from here.*

*His sister moved **far from** home a long time ago.*

Before an adjective:

- ## 2. Far from can mean not.

### Pattern *far from* + adjective

*His wife is far from perfect.*

Adjectives often used with this pattern:

**ideal, perfect, wonderful**

## PRACTICE

- 28-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.**

1. We live two blocks from school. Our school isn't far from \_\_\_\_\_.  
     our friends              our house              our mother              your house
2. He has lied to us many times. He is far from \_\_\_\_\_.  
     handsome              honest              trickery              illegal

## UNIT 29:

# For

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. For indicates a recipient or beneficiary.

**Pattern 1** noun + *for* + noun

*I have a present **for** you.*

Nouns often used before *for*:

**answer, cure, gift, idea, job, letter, message, plan, present, project, question, secret, suggestion, surprise**

**Pattern 2** noun + *for* + *o* noun

*We have news **for** you.*

Typical nouns before *for*:

**advice, help, information, news, nothing, something**

**Pattern 3** verb + noun + *for* + noun

*She sang a song **for** me.*

*He only wants the best **for** you.*

Verbs often used before *for*:

**bake, build, buy, care, cook, create, dance, design, do, get, make, perform, play, sing, want, win, work, write**

#### 2. For indicates a special purpose.

**Pattern 1** noun + *for* + noun

*You need a coat **for** winter.*

*He has a bicycle **for** transportation.*

**Pattern 2** noun + *for* + verb in gerund form

*They have a special place **for** washing cars.*

*The doctor has a machine **for** measuring blood pressure.*

## Related Expression

**room for/space for** enough space to hold an event or accommodate a number of people or things

*We need **room for** twenty people for our party.*

*We don't have **room for** a grand piano.*

### 3. For can indicate the **intended result** of an action.

#### **Pattern 1** verb + **for** + noun

*The boys were screaming **for** help.*

*What are you looking **for**?*

Verbs often used before *for*:

**apply, ask, audition, beg, call, campaign, compete, cry, fight, go, go out, hope, long, look, petition, plead, pray, register, run, scream, send, shop, shout, stand in line, strive, study, train, try out, wait, whistle, wish, work, yell**

## Related Expression

**run for office** be a candidate in an election

#### **Pattern 2** verb + someone + **for** + noun

*We nominated him **for** president of the club.*

Typical verbs:

**ask, need, nominate, send, train, want**

#### **Pattern 3** noun + **for** + noun

*I hope they are developing a cure **for** the flu.*

*Do you have a good recipe **for** lemon pie?*

Nouns often used before *for*:

**cure, directions, idea, instructions, lesson, need, pattern, plan, program, project, recipe, system**

#### **Pattern 4** *be* + adjective of condition + **for** + noun

*I **am** hungry **for** steak and french fries.*

*They **are** ready **for** the ball game.*

Adjectives often used before *for*:

**anxious, eager, greedy, hungry, impatient, prepared, ready, starved, thirsty**

**4. For** can explain the **reason** of an action or fact.

**Pattern 1** verb + **for** + noun

*He apologized **for** his absence.*

**Pattern 2** verb + **for** + gerund form of verb

*He apologized **for** arriving late.*

**Pattern 3** verb + someone + **for** + noun

*They rewarded her **for** bravery.*

*They congratulated him **for** graduating.*

Verbs often used before *for*:

**book, chide, cite, compensate, congratulate, criticize, expel, fine, get, honor, pay, praise, punish, reimburse, reprimand, reward, scold, tease**

**Pattern 4** *be* + adjective + **for** + noun

*She **is** famous **for** her great parties.*

*She **is** famous **for** giving great parties.*

Adjectives often used before *for*:

**famous, feared, known, notorious, popular, loved, well known**

**5. For** can indicate the **expected benefit** of an action.

**Pattern** verb + **for** + noun

*We play soccer **for** fun.*

Typical nouns after *for*:

**exercise, fun, happiness, kicks, money, peace, pleasure, practice, relaxation, security**

**6. For** can indicate the **effect** of an adjective.

**Pattern 1** *be* + adjective + **for** + noun

*Calcium **is** good **for** your bones and teeth.*

Adjectives often used before *for*:

**accessible, available, bad, crucial, good, healthy, helpful, important, necessary, unhealthy, useful**

**Pattern 2** *It + be + adjective + for + object + infinitive*

*It was hard for him to make good grades.*

Adjectives often used before *for*:

bad, better, challenging, customary, crucial, good, helpful, important, impossible, necessary, possible, ridiculous, unimportant, unnecessary, unusual, useful, useless, usual, wasteful, worse

**Pattern 3** *be + (not) adjective + enough + for + noun*

*This apartment is good enough for me.*

**Pattern 4** *be + too + adjective + for + noun*

*That course was too hard for him.*

*This apartment is too small for three people.*

**7. For** can indicate the **recipient** of someone's feelings.

**Pattern** *be + adjective + for + noun (person)*

*We are happy for her on her wedding day.*

*Why are you sorry for yourself?*

Typical adjectives before *for*:

delighted, happy, pleased, sorry, thrilled

**8. For** can indicate activity or preparation on an **occasion**.

**Pattern** *verb + (noun) + for + noun*

*What do you want for your birthday?*

*What did you have for dinner?*

Typical nouns after *for*:

one's anniversary, birthday, graduation breakfast, dinner, the holidays, lunch

**9. For** indicates a **substitute**.

**Pattern 1** *noun + for + noun*

*We had to use a newspaper for an umbrella.*

*I'm sorry, I mistook you for someone else.*

**Pattern 2** *verb + for + noun*

*He taught the class for our teacher, who was sick.*

Verbs often used with this meaning:

**act, conduct, direct, drive, fill in, manage, operate, run, speak, stand in, substitute, teach, work**

## 10. For can mean **available**.

**Pattern** noun + *for* + noun

*The house is **for** sale.*

*The pianos are **for** use by the students.*

Nouns often used after *for*:

**hire, practice, purchase, rent, sale, use**

## Related Expression

**up for grabs** available to many people

*The chairmanship is **up for grabs**.*

## 11. For can indicate a **destination**.

**Pattern** verb + *for* + noun

*We are leaving **for** Spain in two weeks.*

Verbs used before *for*:

**head, leave, plan, set out, start out, take off**

## 12. For can indicate **representation**.

*Red is **for** stop; yellow is **for** caution; green is **for** go.*

*M is **for** Mary.*

## 13. For can indicate **equality in an exchange**.

**Pattern 1** *be* + noun + *for* + noun

*The bananas **are** two pounds **for** a dollar.*

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *for* + noun

*We bought three books **for** twenty-five dollars.*

Typical verbs:

buy, do, exchange, hand over, make, rent, sell, take, trade, want

**Pattern 3** verb + *for* + noun

*He works **for** twenty dollars an hour.*

### Related Expressions

**for free** without charge

**for nothing** without charge

### 14. For can indicate **amount**.

**Pattern** noun + *for* + noun

*The mechanic sent them a bill **for** three hundred dollars.*

Nouns often used before *for*:

**bill, check, invoice, receipt, request**

### 15. For can indicate **length of time**.

*He was here **for** ten years.*

### Related Expressions

**for good** forever

*He came to live in this country **for good**.*

**for life** until death

*They sent him to prison **for life**.*

### 16. For can indicate **need on a future date**.

*She needs the musicians **for** Thursday afternoon.*

### 17. For can mean **despite**.

**Pattern** *for* + *all* + possessive pronoun + noun

***For all** her experience, she's not a very good secretary.*

Nouns often used with this meaning:

education, experience, expertise, knowledge, popularity, qualifications, training

**18. For indicates the person or people responsible for an action.**

**Pattern** *for* + person + infinitive

*Your final grade is **for** the teacher to decide.*

*That problem is **for** you to solve.*

**19. For can describe a sense or talent.**

**Pattern** *have* + noun + *for* + noun

*He has an ear **for** music.*

*She has a touch **for** the piano.*

Nouns often used before *for*:

aptitude, ear, eye, knack, rhythm, talent, touch, voice

**Related Expressions**

**have a nose for gossip** often hear and spread news about others

**have an eye for the girls** often admire pretty women

**20. For can indicate an unusual fact or exception.**

**Pattern 1** adjective + *for* + noun

*That boy is tall **for** his age.*

*It's warm **for** February.*

**Pattern 2** adverb + *for* + noun

*She plays very well **for** a beginner.*

**21. For can indicate purpose or outcome**

**Pattern** verb + *for* + noun

*We are **for** higher wages.*

*You have to stand up **for** your rights.*

Verbs often used before *for*:



**be, push, stand, stand up, fight, strike, work hard**

## **22. For can mean because of.**

*We are thankful **for** your help.*

*She is grateful **for** her family.*

## **23. For can mean favor or support.**

*I'm cheering **for** my school's team.*

Verbs often used before *for*:

**be, cheer, show respect**

## **Related Expression**

**to have a preference for** to prefer

*She **has a preference for** the other job.*

## **As a conjunction**

**For** means **because**.

*She went home early, **for** she was sick.*

## **Expressions**

**for once** for the first time, showing exasperation

*Would you please be at work on time **for once**!*

**once and for all** immediately and forever after

*She decided to stop smoking **once and for all**.*

**word for word** reading or talking slowly, one word at a time

*He read the letter to me **word for word**.*

**for the time being** meanwhile; until something happens to change the situation

*We can't do anything now, so **for the time being** we will act as usual.*

**for fear of** in order to avoid

*He worked and saved **for fear of** being poor again.*

**for a change** as usual, sarcastically

*It's raining **for a change**.*

**be for the best** even though the situation is unpleasant, it may be good

*I was sad when she died, but it **was for the best**, because she was suffering a lot.*

**go for a drive/run/swim/walk** spend a short time doing that activity

*We always **go for a walk** after lunch.*

**see for oneself** investigate personally

*I couldn't believe her, so I decided to **see for myself**.*

**for better or for worse** accepting all conditions, regardless of what happens in the future

*He promised to stay with her forever, **for better or for worse**.*

**for naught** with no result

*Our efforts were all **for naught**; we lost.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**go (in) for** (nonseparable) like a lot

*The college girls really **go for** Latin dancing.*

**go out for** (nonseparable) perform in hopes of being selected to play on a team

*She **went out for** the softball team, but didn't make it.*

**care for** (nonseparable) love

*She really **cares for** him.*

**care for** (nonseparable) want

*She doesn't **care for** more ice cream, thank you.*

**fall for** (nonseparable) innocently believe or trust

*He **falls for** all of her tricks.*

**not stand for** (nonseparable) not allow

*The teacher **won't stand for** talking during a test.*

**stand for** (nonseparable) tolerate

*His mother doesn't **stand for** laziness.*

**stand up for** (nonseparable) support publicly

*His best **friend stood up for** him through all his problems.*

**take for** (separable) consider as

*Don't **take him for** a fool; he is really quite smart.*

**try out for** audition or perform in hopes of being selected to play a part in a show, band, orchestra, play, or team

*He's going to **try out for** the school play.*

## PRACTICE

### 29-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. I know it's your birthday, and I have a \_\_\_\_\_ for you.  
heartache                      surprise                      headache                      love
2. They practice yoga for \_\_\_\_\_.  
necessary                      painful                      relaxation                      boring
3. We stood in line two hours for \_\_\_\_\_.  
fun                      tickets                      speed                      good luck
4. We congratulated him for \_\_\_\_\_.  
winning                      losing                      lying                      sleeping
5. It's cold there. You will need \_\_\_\_\_ for winter.  
a bathing suit                      a warm coat                      shorts                      a straw hat
6. She failed the test; it was too \_\_\_\_\_ for her.  
difficult                      simple                      easy                      slow
7. *A* is for ant. *B* is for bee. *C* is for \_\_\_\_\_.  
bear                      cat                      deer                      elephant
8. Anybody can be the Treasurer. The office is up for \_\_\_\_\_.  
sale                      rent                      grabs                      five dollars
9. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ for Mexico in two weeks.  
staying                      flying                      driving                      leaving
10. She sent me a \_\_\_\_\_ for \$29.  
bill                      paper                      letter                      cash
11. You don't have to pay for these pencils. You can have them for \_\_\_\_\_.  
ten cents                      free                      ten dollars                      a dime

12. I'm so \_\_\_\_\_ for you for your promotion.  
jealous                      happy                      unhappy                      sorry
13. He \_\_\_\_\_ the car for me when I got tired.  
drove                      argued                      saved                      waited
14. We don't plan on going back. We came here for \_\_\_\_\_.  
class                      good                      war                      problem
15. She's taking piano lessons because she has a good ear for \_\_\_\_\_.  
art                      violin                      music                      opera
16. She is 86, and still beautiful. She looks \_\_\_\_\_ for her age.  
wrinkled                      tired                      short                      good
17. For all her experience in the movies, she's not a great \_\_\_\_\_.  
actress                      waitress                      teacher                      nurse
18. The workers are striking for \_\_\_\_\_.  
fun                      vacation                      higher wages                      boss

**29-2. Use an expression with *for* to express the following:**

1. You never help me! Please help me now!
2. We didn't trust the travel guidebook, so we investigated personally.
3. You're on time—as usual (sarcastically).
4. He decided to stop calling her, period.
5. It was very hot, so I decided to swim for ten or fifteen minutes.
6. We cannot change the situation now; we will stay quiet until things change.

**29-3. Use a phrasal verb with *for* to express the following:**

1. They supported the mayor when he was accused of misconduct.
2. He loves his mom dearly.
3. She is hoping to be in the play, and has an audition next week.
4. The university does not allow cheating.
5. No, thank you. I don't want any dessert.

## UNIT 30:

# From

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. From indicates a **source**.

**Pattern 1** verb + *from* + noun

*Tony is **from** Alabama.*

*I hear **from** him every week.*

Verbs commonly used before *from*:

**be, call, come, derive, hear**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *from* + noun

*We get help **from** our neighbors.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

**borrow, bring, buy, collect, copy, get, mail, obtain, receive, send**

#### 2. From indicates a **point of departure**.

**Pattern** verb + *from* + noun (place)

*The ship sailed **from** San Francisco.*

*Please start **from** the beginning.*

Typical verbs:

**begin, depart, drive, fly, go, graduate, move, read, sail, start (over), take off**

#### 3. From can indicate **separation**.

**Pattern 1** verb + *away from* + noun

*We ran **away from** the building.*

*Keep **away from** the crowd.*

Typical verbs before *away from*:

**drive, get, keep, move, run, walk**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *from* + noun

*We collected the papers **from** the students.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

**borrow, buy, chase, collect, delete, dissociate, eliminate, erase, expel, hide, keep (away), protect, release, remove, save, scare (away), separate, shield, steal, subtract, take (away)**

#### 4. From can indicate difference.

**Pattern 1** number + *from* + number

*Three **from** nine equals six.*

**Pattern 2** number + noun of time or distance + *from*

*He lives five miles **from** here.*

*They are only twenty minutes (away) **from** the city.*

*I will see you two weeks **from** today.*

#### Related Expressions

**be different from** not be alike

*My sweater **is different from** yours.*

**differ from**

*My opinion **differs from** his.*

**distinguish from** identify in a comparison

*I can't **distinguish** her **from** her twin sister.*

**tell from** identify in a comparison

*I can't **tell** her **from** her twin sister.*

**know from** identify in a comparison

*I don't **know** her **from** her twin sister.*

**not know someone from Adam** never have met someone

*I'm meeting his brother at the airport, but I don't **know** him **from** Adam.*

5. **From . . . to** can indicate the lowest and highest limits of an estimate; **between**.

**Pattern** *from* + number + *to* + number

*You will earn **from** ten **to** fifteen dollars an hour.*

*We expect **from** twenty-five **to** thirty people.*

6. **From . . . to** can give the **starting and ending time or place**.

*We work **from** 9 A.M. **to** 5 P.M.*

### Related Expressions

**from beginning to end**

**from front to back**

**from May to September**

**from one place to another**

**from one side to the other**

**from start to finish**

**from top to bottom**

7. **From** can indicate the **material** something is composed of.

**Pattern** *be* + past participle of verb + *from* + noun

*This suit **was made from** three different fabrics.*

*A new plant **has been developed from** those seeds.*

Past participles commonly used before *from*:

**crafted, created, derived, developed, fashioned, made, put together, sewn**

8. **From** can indicate a **position** for viewing or hearing.

*I can see the bridge **from** my window.*

*Let's try to see the problem **from** his point of view.*

*Can you hear the actors **from** the back of the auditorium?*

### Related Expressions

from here, there

from his/her/my/our/their/your point of view

from this/that angle, distance, position, vantage point

## 9. From can indicate a cause.

**Pattern 1** adjective + *from* + gerund form of verb

*They are exhausted **from** working so hard.*

Adjectives often used with this pattern:

**better, bored, drunk, exhausted, fat, healthy, sick, sore, tired, well, worse**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *from* + noun

*They knew the songs **from** memory.*

*He learned his lesson **from** hard work.*

Typical nouns after *from*:

**hard work, listening, memory, studying**

## Related Expression

**to suffer from** to hurt because of

*She **suffers from** neglect.*

## 10. From can indicate avoidance.

**Pattern 1** verb + *from* + noun

*Try to keep **from** shaking.*

*We can't hide **from** them any longer.*

**Pattern 2** verb + direct object + *from* + verb in gerund form

*Try to keep him **from** shaking.*

*They hope to stop her **from** running away.*

Typical verbs:

**keep, prevent, stop**

## 11. From can mean because of.

**Pattern** *from* + noun



*From the way he walks, I think his ankle is sprained.*  
*From his accent, I believe he is from Boston.*

## PRACTICE

### 30-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank.

1. She has a devoted son. She \_\_\_\_\_ from him every day.  
calls                      texts                      hears                      loves
2. I finally \_\_\_\_\_ his name from my account.  
stole                      subtracted                      borrowed                      deleted
3. Where did you \_\_\_\_\_ from?  
study                      graduate                      go to college                      finish
4. The plane \_\_\_\_\_ from New York.  
landed                      sailed                      took off                      separated
5. We will be working from \_\_\_\_\_.  
9 A.M. to 5 P.M.                      5 A.M. to 4 A.M.                      3 A.M. to 2 A.M.                      9 P.M. to 8 P.M.
6. She hopes to earn from \_\_\_\_\_ a year.  
\$70,000 to \$60,000    \$60,000 to \$70,000    \$100,000 to \$30,000                      \$90,000 to \$85,000
7. He refuses to \_\_\_\_\_ the problem from my point of view.  
see                      know                      read                      talk
8. We are \_\_\_\_\_ from working so hard.  
sane                      tired                      happy                      unhappy
9. She's so sad. I'm trying to keep her from \_\_\_\_\_.  
laughing                      crying                      telling jokes                      swimming
10. They are identical twins. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ one from the other.  
see                      talk                      say                      tell

## UNIT 31:

# In

### Basic Meanings

1. **In** indicates **location inside** or **within** something else.

**Pattern 1** verb + *in* + noun

*We live **in** that house.*

*The pencils are **in** the box.*

Nouns commonly used after *in*:

Geographical areas:

**city, continent, country, state, town**

*He lives **in** Seattle, Washington, in the United States.*

Comfortable, protected places:

**alcove, cocoon, large chair, nest**

*He sat down **in** the chair and read his novel.*

Inside areas:

**attic, balcony, basement, building, corner, hall, kitchen, office, room**

*She is **in** her office, **in** that building, **in** room 302, **in** the corner.*

Vehicles where the passengers cannot walk around:

**canoe, car, helicopter, small airplane, small boat**

*We went **in** the car, but they went **in** a helicopter.*

Publications and speeches:

**article, book, dictionary, encyclopedia, lecture, magazine, newspaper, speech**

*He didn't say that **in** his speech, but I read it **in** the newspaper.*

**Pattern 2** *be* + *in* +  $\emptyset$  noun

*He can't come to the phone because he's **in** bed.*

Nouns commonly used after *in*:

**bed, church, class, jail, place, school, town**

**Pattern 3** verb + noun + *in* + noun

*Put the pencils **in** the box.*

Typical verbs:

**drop, get, insert, lay, place, push, put**

Typical nouns:

**bag, box, drawer, file, folder, notebook, sack, suitcase, trunk, wallet**

## **2. In** indicates **membership** of a group or category.

**Pattern** *be* + noun + *in* + noun

*There **are** seven people **in** our family.*

*Your brother **is** the expert **in** that office.*

Nouns commonly used after *in*:

**association, category, choir, chorus, club, family, fraternity, group, office, society, sorority**

## **3. In** can indicate a **period of time**.

**Pattern** *be* + *in* + time period

century

**in + the**

*She was born **in the** 1800s.*

decade

**in + the**

*He lived **in** Arkansas **in the** 1950s.*

*Life was quieter **in the** fifties.*

month

**in + ø**

*He took his vacation **in** March.*

period of the day

**in + the**

*I work **in the** morning.*

*My boss works **in the** afternoon.*

*We relax **in the** evening.*

period of time in

general

**in + the**

*We lived there **in the** past, and we will live here **in the** future*

stage of life	<b>adulthood, childhood, death, health, life, sickness</b>
<b>in + ø</b>	<i>In childhood she was always <b>in</b> good health.</i>
season	<b>spring, summer, fall, winter</b>
<b>in +/- (ø)</b>	<i>They always go to Europe <b>in</b> (the) summer.</i>
year	
<b>in + ø</b>	<i>Their son was born <b>in</b> 1994.</i>
during general activities	<b>actions, deeds, dreams, prayers, thoughts</b>
<b>in + one's</b>	<i>She is always <b>in our</b> thoughts.</i>

#### 4. In can mean **after** a period of **time**.

**Pattern** *in* + (number) + noun

*She will be here **in** five minutes.*

#### Related Expression

**in no time** very soon

*He will be here **in no time**.*

#### 5. In can mean **movement** or **transfer** from one place into another.

**Pattern 1** verb + *in(to)* + noun

*They went **in** the store.*

Verbs often used with this meaning:

**burst, butt, come, get, go, jump, move, run, walk**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *in* + noun

*Please pour the juice **in** the glass.*

Typical verbs:

**draw, drop, fly, lay, place, pour, pull, push, put, ram, shove, squeeze, throw**

**Pattern 3** verb + object + *in*

*When you finish your test, hand it **in** (to the teacher).*

Typical verbs:

**bring, hand, pass, take, turn**

**6. In** indicates the **number of individual parts** of something.

**Pattern** **number + plural noun + *in* + noun**

*There are seven days **in** a week.*

*There are one hundred cents **in** a dollar.*

**7. In** means during a type of **weather**.

**Pattern 1** ***in + the + noun***

*They walked all day **in the** rain.*

Nouns used with this pattern:

**cold, fog, heat, humidity, rain, snow, storm, sun**

**Pattern 2** ***in + ø + noun***

***In** hot weather we stay inside.*

Nouns used with this pattern:

**bad weather, cold weather, foggy weather, good weather, hot weather, rainy weather, sunshine**

**8. In** can indicate separated **parts** of something.

**Pattern** **verb + noun + *in(to)* + plural noun**

*She cut the cake **in** twelve pieces.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

**cut, divide, separate, sever, split**

Nouns commonly used after *in*:

**halves, parts, pieces, portions, sections**

## **Related Expression**

**in two** in halves

*We only had one candy bar, so we cut it **in two** and shared it.*

**9. In** can indicate **direction**.

*The girls came **in** this direction, and the boys went **in** the opposite direction.*

## As an adjective

**in-bound** moving toward the city or town

*There was a lot of **in-bound** traffic this morning.*

## 10. In can indicate **ratio**.

**Pattern** number + **in** + number

*He is one **in** a million.*

*Four **in** ten are employed full-time.*

## 11. In indicates the **style** or **composition** of recorded material.

**Pattern** **in** + noun

*The letter was written **in** ink.*

*They printed the photographs **in** duplicate.*

Nouns commonly used after *in*:

**black and white, bold, capital letters, color, duplicate, ink, italics, lower case, oil, pencil, print, water colors**

## 12. In indicates the use of a **language** or **style** of expression.

**Pattern** **in** + noun

*The paper was written **in** English.*

*The girls chorus sang **in** harmony.*

Nouns often used after *in*:

**a few words, chorus, code, concert, detail, full, harmony, music, poetry, rhythm, sync, tune, verse**

## 13. In indicates **current style**.

**Pattern** **in** + noun

*Her clothes are always **in** fashion.*

*She likes to be **in** style.*

Nouns used with this pattern:

**fashion, season, style, vogue**

## Related Expression

**to be in** to be in fashion

*Platform shoes **are in** again this season.*

### 14. In indicates a **condition**.

**Pattern 1** *be* + **in** + *a* + **noun**

*She **is** always **in a** good mood.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

**good/bad mood, hurry, mess, rage, stew**

**Pattern 2** **verb** + **in** + **ø** **noun**

*We **are in** good health.*

*She **ran into** the room **in** tears.*

Nouns often used with this pattern:

**anguish, awe, chaos, comfort, condition, confusion, danger, despair, dire straits, disarray, disaster, disgrace, disorder, doubt, dread, fear, good/bad health, love, need, pain, ruins, shape, sickness, tears, trouble**

### 15. In describes a manner of **behavior**.

**Pattern 1** **verb** + **in** + *a* + **noun**

*He **spoke in a** loud voice.*

Nouns often used with this pattern:

**manner, voice, way**

**Pattern 2** **verb** + **noun** + **in** + **ø** **noun**

*He **told me that story in** confidence.*

Nouns often used after *in*:

**cold blood, confidence, fairness, friendship, fun, person, silence, someone's absence, someone's presence, trust**

**Pattern 3** **verb** + **noun** + **in** + **adjective**

*She **is working on her exams in** earnest.*

Typical adjectives after *in*:

**earnest, private, public**

## 16. In means wearing.

### Pattern 1 *in* + noun

*She came **in** a long dress, and he was **in** a suit and tie.*

Typical nouns:

**bathing suit, coat, dress, hat, skirt, suit, tie, T-shirt**

### Pattern 2 *in* + Ø noun

*Everybody went to the party **in** costume.*

Typical nouns:

**black (or any color), braces, braids, costume, curls, disguise, drag, high heels, jeans, jewels, make-up, mourning (black), ponytails, (tennis) shoes, shorts, uniform**

## Related Expression

**in the nude** not wearing anything

*He sleeps **in the nude**.*

## 17. In indicates involvement in a career or project.

### Pattern *be/be involved/work* + *in* + Ø noun

*My uncle **is in** business for himself.*

*She **has worked in** insurance for years.*

*They **are involved in** computers.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

**accounting, administration, architecture, banking, business, computers, entertainment, government, insurance, journalism, landscaping, law, medicine, politics, publishing, research, stocks and bonds, teaching, training, the air force, the army, the coast guard, the marines, the military, the navy, the reserves**

## 18. In defines an arrangement.

### Pattern 1 *in* + *a* + singular noun

*The children all sat **in a** circle.*

Nouns often used with this meaning:



circle, group, line, pile, row, stack

**Pattern 2** *in* + plural or noncount noun

*She put the clothes **in** piles on the floor.*

Nouns often used with this meaning:

**bunches, bundles, folds, groups, lines, piles, rows, stacks, alignment, order**

## 19. In indicates **composition of money**.

**Pattern** *in* + noun

*She always pays **in** cash.*

*I have six dollars **in** change.*

Nouns used with this meaning:

**bills, cash, change, checks, coins, dimes, dollars, nickels, pennies, quarters, ones (one-dollar bills), fives, tens, twenties, fifties, hundreds**

## 20. In indicates **purpose**.

**Pattern 1** *in* + **o** noun + *of* + noun

*We are here **in** memory **of** our dear brother.*

*They came **in** search **of** gold.*

Nouns commonly used with this meaning:

**aid, appreciation, celebration, commemoration, dedication, honor, lieu, memory, praise, search**

**Pattern 2** *in* + **order** + *to* + verb

*She came here **in order to** learn English.*

*They are saving money **in order to** buy a car.*

## 21. In can define a **measurement**.

**Pattern 1** number + noun + *in* + noun

*The box is one foot **in** height, eight inches **in** depth, and eight inches **in** width.*

**Pattern 2** verb + *in* + noun

*We weigh **in** pounds; I don't know my weight **in** kilos.*

Typical nouns used after *in*:

centimeters, feet, inches, kilos, meters, miles, ounces, pounds, yards

## 22. In can indicate a special relationship.

**Pattern 1** *in* +  $\emptyset$  noun + *with* + noun

*All of the parents are working **in** cooperation **with** the teachers.*

Nouns often used with this meaning:

agreement, alignment, cahoots, collaboration, collusion, combination, common, comparison, competition, conflict, conjunction, connection, contact, cooperation, debate, dispute, good, harmony, rhythm, step, sympathy, touch, trouble

**Pattern 2** *in* + noun + *with* + noun

*She was **in** a fight **with** him yesterday.*

Typical nouns used before *in*:

argument, debate, exchange, fight, session, situation

## 23. In indicates a location on the body.

**Pattern 1** verb + noun + *in* + *the* + body part

*He kicked the attacker **in the** stomach.*

*She scratched herself **in the** eye.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

hit, hurt, kick, knock, poke, punch, scratch, slap, strike

**Pattern 2** *have* + noun + *in* + possessive pronoun + noun

*I **have** a pain **in** my chest.*

*She **has** an ache **in** her left leg.*

## Related Expression

to be a pain in the neck to be annoying

*Her little sister is eight years old, and **she's a pain in the neck**.*

## 24. In can indicate a current state.

**Pattern 1** *be* + *in* +  $\emptyset$  noun

*The papers **are in** circulation.*

*Your book **is in** demand.*

*The car **is not in** gear.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

**bankruptcy, captivity, charge, check, circulation, confinement, conflict, control, debt, demand, jail, power, session, trouble, trust**

Nouns referring to the transmission of a car or other vehicle:

**drive, first, second, third, fourth, fifth, gear, neutral, park, reverse**

## **25. In can indicate a reaction.**

**Pattern** verb + **in** + noun

*Her friend left **in** disgust.*

*She hung her head **in** disappointment.*

Nouns commonly used after *in*:

**apprehension, approbation, approval, assent, compliance, confusion, consent, contempt, defeat, defiance, delight, desolation, disappointment, disdain, disgrace, disgust, dismay, disobedience, dissent, grief, happiness, pain, reaction, relief, sadness, sorrow, the affirmative**

Typical verbs used before *in*:

**cry, exclaim, go away, leave, react, scream, smile, sneer, squeal, tremble, weep, hang/nod/shake one's head, stick up one's nose**

## **26. In can indicate quantities.**

**Pattern** **in** + plural noun

*People came **in** thousands to see the shrine.*

Nouns typically used after *in*:

**busloads, carloads, groups of ten, hordes, hundreds, small groups, thousands, truckloads**

## **27. In can indicate an example.**

**Pattern** noun + **in** + noun that names first noun

*She has a good friend **in** Mrs. Jones.*

*They have a wonderful teacher **in** John Smith.*

## 28. In can mean **when**.

**Pattern** *in* + verb in gerund form

*She is correct **in** saying that he was lazy.*

***In** signing your name, you are admitting guilt.*

## 29. In can refer to the **process of a game**.

**Pattern** *in* + name of game

***In** baseball, there are nine players on a team.*

*The boys have been **in** a game of chess all afternoon.*

Names of common games:

**badminton, baseball, bridge, canasta, cards, chess, football, golf, hide-and-seek, hockey, Monopoly, polo, racquetball, solitaire, tag, tennis, volleyball**

## 30. In can mean **on the occasion of**.

**Pattern** *in* + Ø noun

*She smiled **in** acceptance.*

*He nodded his head **in** agreement.*

Nouns often used with this meaning:

**acceptance, action, comparison, conclusion, contrast, conversation, defeat, practice, return, the end**

## 31. In can indicate a **warning** or **prediction** of a reaction.

**Pattern** *be* + *in* + *for* + *a* + noun

*He **is in for a** shock when he gets here tomorrow.*

Nouns used with this meaning:

**rude awakening, shock, surprise, treat**

## 32. In can define the **emphasis** or **perspective** of a statement.

**Pattern 1** *in* + Ø noun

***In** fact, this is a very good report.*

*The children behave themselves **in** general.*

Nouns commonly used after *in*:

**addition, all, all seriousness, analysis, answer, conclusion, fact, general, particular, question, return, reverse, theory, truth**

**Pattern 2** *in* + *one's* + noun

*In my opinion, this is a mistake.*

Typical nouns:

**case, heart, opinion, view**

**Pattern 3** *in* + *the* + noun

*In the end, everything was fine.*

Nouns used with this pattern:

**end, final analysis**

**Pattern 4** *in* + noun + *of* + noun

*She went to the party **in spite of** her mother's wishes.*

***In case of** fire, leave the building.*

Nouns used with this pattern:

**case, light, spite, terms, view**

### 33. In can indicate the **quality** of a noun.

**Pattern 1** *be* + adjective + *in* + noun

*They **are** lacking **in** the necessities of a decent life.*

*Those people may be poor in commodities, but they **are** rich **in** spirit.*

*Her sister **is** blind **in** one eye.*

**Pattern 2** *be* + *the* + superlative adjective + noun + *in* + name of category

*He **is the** best student **in** the class.*

*That **is the** longest river **in** the world.*

### 34. In can indicate a **topic**.

**Pattern 1** noun + *in* + noun

*There was a big improvement **in** her grades this term.*

Typical nouns before *in*:

**advance, change, decline, decrease, improvement, increase**

## **Pattern 2** verb + *in* + noun

*She participated **in** the planning of the conference.*

*He persists **in** calling me on the telephone.*

Typical verbs:

**assist, cooperate, help, invest, participate, persist**

## **Pattern 3** adjective + *in* + noun

*This land is rich **in** minerals.*

*She is very interested **in** antique furniture.*

Typical adjectives:

**basking, covered, drowning, interested, rich, steeped, submerged**

## **Expressions**

**in brief** briefly

***In brief**, we are leaving in five minutes.*

**in short** briefly

***In short**, everybody is getting a raise in pay.*

**in advance** before an event

*To get tickets to the concert, you have to pay **in advance**.*

**in no time** very soon

*He will be here **in no time**.*

**in two** in halves

*We only had one candy bar, so we cut it **in two** and shared it*

**in a corner** trapped

*With so many bills, and no job, he was really **in a corner**.*

**in the dark** ignorant of the facts

*My colleagues kept me **in the dark** about their plans to leave the company.*

**in good hands (with)** well-served, safe

*I know I am **in good hands with** my lawyer.*

**tongue-in-cheek** sarcastically

*All the nice things he said about her were said **tongue-in-cheek**.*

**to be in hot water** to be in trouble

*She has been late three times, and now she's really **in hot water** with the boss.*

**to be in the black** to be out of debt

*We have paid off all our credit cards; we are finally **in the black**.*

**in deference to** with great respect for

*We are acting **in deference to** our chairman's wishes.*

**hand-in-hand** (adverb) with hands linked

*Couples love to walk **hand-in-hand**.*

**arm-in-arm** (adverb) with arms linked

*She always walked **arm-in-arm** with her mother.*

**to be in line** to be waiting in an orderly fashion, one after the other

*I've been **in line for** two hours to get tickets.*

**in compensation for** to restore balance, pay for

*She made me a dress **in compensation** for the favors I did for her.*

**in any case** no matter what happens

*We will have the party **in any case**.*

**in that case** if that happens

***In that case**, everybody will stay at home.*

**in addition to** plus

***In addition to** your car payment, you will have to pay for registration and insurance.*

**in the air** an indication that something has been discussed

*A raise in salaries is **in the air**.*

**in sight** an indication that something is visible, or will happen soon

*We are almost there; the bridge is **in sight**.*

*The work is almost finished; our vacation is **in sight**.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**break in** (intransitive) enter without permission, removing a barrier

*Someone **broke in** yesterday and took their bicycles.*

**break in** (separable) use something for first time, as a warm-up; to tame

*The boy got a new bicycle and couldn't wait to **break it in**.*

**break in on** (nonseparable) enter without permission, surprising those inside

*We were having a private conversation when he **broke in on** us.*

**butt in** (intransitive) interrupt a private conversation

*Everything was fine until she **butted in**.*

**check in** (intransitive) register

*After they **checked in** at the desk they went to their room.*

**check in** (separable) leave something temporarily in a guarded place

*The bags were heavy, so he **checked them in** right away.*

**chip in/pitch in** (intransitive) contribute

*The students all **chipped in** and bought the teacher a present.*

**close in (on)** (nonseparable) approach and surround

*The people were scared as the enemy **closed in on** them.*

**count in** (separable) expect someone's participation

*If you are looking for volunteers, **count me in**.*

**do in** (separable) tire

*I exercised at the gym for two hours, and it **did me in**.*

**drop in** (separable) let something fall into a deep container

*After you finish the letter, please **drop it in** the mailbox.*

**drop in (on)** (nonseparable) visit someone without notice

*We hadn't seen them in years, and they **dropped in on** us yesterday morning.*

**fill in** (separable) complete a form

*Here is the application form; please **fill it in**.*

**fill in (for)** (nonseparable) substitute

*Another doctor is **filling in for** her while she's on vacation.*

**get in** (nonseparable) enter, perhaps with slight difficulty

*The door was locked, but we **got in** through the window.*

**get in** (separable) place inside, perhaps with slight difficulty

*The mail slot was too small for the package; I couldn't **get it in**.*

**give in (to)** (nonseparable) surrender

*I hope she never **gives in to** his wishes; he wants to control her.*

**keep in** (separable) not allow to go out

*The child was sick and his mother **kept him in**.*



**key in** (separable) type into the computer

*First you have to **key in** your password.*

**kick in** (intransitive) begin to function, as a backup

*When it gets very cold, the electric heater **kicks in**.*

**look in (on)** (nonseparable) occasionally check

*Will you **look in on** my mother every afternoon while I'm away?*

**squeeze in** (separable) make room or time for somebody

*The doctor was busy, but he managed to **squeeze me in**.*

**step in** (intransitive) enter

*I knocked on the door and he told me to **step in**.*

**take in** (separable) to make smaller

*The skirt was too big, so she **took it in** at the waist.*

**take in** (separable) to comprehend

*I'm not sure she **took in** everything you were saying.*

**turn in** (intransitive) go to bed

*They were really tired, and had to **turn in**.*

## PRACTICE

### 31-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. Lisa is in the \_\_\_\_\_.

car

bus

train

ship

2. Please write your answers in your \_\_\_\_\_.

paper

purse

notebook

calendar

3. Your brother is the best singer in the \_\_\_\_\_.

team

committee

chorus

board

4. That song was popular in the \_\_\_\_\_.

80s

morning

last year

school

5. It's 3:30. I'll text you at 4 o'clock. I'll text you in \_\_\_\_\_.

3 hours

6 years

4 days

30 minutes

6. Please put the \_\_\_\_\_ in the recycle bin.

- |         |              |            |             |
|---------|--------------|------------|-------------|
| garbage | banana peels | used paper | clean paper |
|---------|--------------|------------|-------------|
7. We have to \_\_\_\_\_ in our papers to the teacher.
- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| tell | give | hand | foot |
|------|------|------|------|
8. I'm going to cut the cake in 12 \_\_\_\_\_.
- |        |      |         |          |
|--------|------|---------|----------|
| plates | cups | saucers | portions |
|--------|------|---------|----------|
9. He was coming toward me. He was coming in \_\_\_\_\_ direction.
- |      |      |           |   |
|------|------|-----------|---|
| this | that | the other | a |
|------|------|-----------|---|
10. She was all wet. She must have been in \_\_\_\_\_.
- |              |          |            |         |
|--------------|----------|------------|---------|
| the sunshine | the rain | the middle | outside |
|--------------|----------|------------|---------|
11. Were the photos in color or in \_\_\_\_\_?
- |                |                 |                 |      |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|------|
| blue and green | yellow and gray | black and white | gray |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|------|
12. The children sang the songs in perfect \_\_\_\_\_.
- |        |       |         |        |
|--------|-------|---------|--------|
| colors | words | letters | rhythm |
|--------|-------|---------|--------|
13. Shannon doesn't buy new clothes every year. She isn't always in \_\_\_\_\_.
- |       |      |        |       |
|-------|------|--------|-------|
| style | sync | school | store |
|-------|------|--------|-------|
14. Your hostess is a great cook. You are in for a \_\_\_\_\_.
- |          |       |            |           |
|----------|-------|------------|-----------|
| disaster | treat | happy hour | long time |
|----------|-------|------------|-----------|
15. Her school work is getting better. She shows a big improvement in her \_\_\_\_\_.
- |         |      |        |        |
|---------|------|--------|--------|
| talents | book | grades | tablet |
|---------|------|--------|--------|

**31-2. Use an expression with *in* to express the following:**

1. He will have to pass a driving test plus a written test.
2. They have discussed a ban on smoking on campus.

**31-3. Use a phrasal verb with *in* to express the following:**

1. There was a robbery at our house last night.
2. We were having a private conversation, and he kept interrupting.
3. You should register at the hotel as soon as you arrive.
4. Before the plane lands, you have to complete this form.

5. I will definitely participate!

## UNIT 32:

# In Back Of

### Basic Meaning

#### 1. In back of means located **behind**.

**Pattern 1** noun + *in back of* + noun

*There is a beautiful tree **in back of** our house.*

**Pattern 2** verb + *in back of* + noun

*Your sister sits **in back of** me in class.*

### PRACTICE

#### 32-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. Charles sits in the third row. I sit in the fourth row. I sit in back of \_\_\_\_\_.

him

her

them

you

2. They are so lucky! They have a big \_\_\_\_\_ in back of their house.

hole

fish

tennis court

telephone pole

## UNIT 33:

# In Front Of

### Basic Meanings

1. **In front of** means located **before** or **facing** something.

**Pattern 1** noun + *in front of* + noun

*There is a van **in front of** their house.*

**Pattern 2** verb + *in front of* + noun

*The teacher usually stands **in front of** the class.*

*He was **in front of** me in line.*

2. **In front of** can mean **in the future**.

*She has a lot of problems **in front of** her.*

### PRACTICE

- 33-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. Your trip to Spain next month sounds fabulous. You have a lot of new \_\_\_\_\_ in front of you.

friends

experiences

bullfighters

flamenco dancers

2. The teacher usually stands in front of the \_\_\_\_\_.

office

playground

class

clinic

## UNIT 34:

# Inside

### Basic Meaning

**1. Inside** means **located in the interior part of something; enclosed in.**

**Pattern** verb + noun + *inside* + noun

*There are some little toy animals **inside** the box.*

*She put the money **inside** the envelope.*

### As an adverb

**Inside** means **indoors**, within a building.

*It started to rain, so we went **inside**.*

### PRACTICE

**34-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.**

1. We can't wait to go inside the \_\_\_\_\_, to see if it will work for our family.

box

house

station

airport

2. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ for you inside the envelope.

party

tickets

invitation

surprise

## UNIT 35:

# Instead Of

### Basic Meaning

#### 1. Instead of means substituting for.

**Pattern** verb + noun + *instead of* + noun

*They went to Hawaii **instead of** South America.*

*She cooks a lot of vegetables **instead of** meat.*

### PRACTICE

#### 35-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

- I have changed my mind. I want to go to the movies instead of \_\_\_\_\_.  
to the mall                  seeing a film                  to the cinema                  watching a movie
- They changed our flight. We're going to \_\_\_\_\_ instead of Africa.  
Nigeria                  Kenya                  Ghana                  Australia

## UNIT 36:

# Into

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Into indicates entrance.

**Pattern 1** verb + *into* + noun

*We went **into** his office.*

*I drive **into** the city every day.*

Typical verbs before *into*:

**blow, break, come, drive, fall, fly, gaze, get, go, look, move, walk, run, sail, stare, stomp, storm**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *into* + noun

*She poured the juice **into** the glass.*

Verbs often used with this pattern:

**blow, cram, drive, get, move, place, pour, put, set, throw**

#### 2. Into can indicate forced contact.

**Pattern** verb + *into* + noun

*That car crashed **into** a tree.*

Verbs often used before *into*:

**crash, push, pull, run, smash, tear**

### Expression

**to run something into the ground** to talk about something too much

*We are sick of hearing about his job; he really **runs it into the ground**.*

#### 3. Into can indicate division.



**Pattern 1** number + *into* + number = number

*Three into twelve equals four.*

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *into* + (number) + noun

*She cut the pie into eight wedges.*

*The vase broke into a million pieces.*

Typical verbs before *into*:

**arrange, break, cut, divide, separate**

Typical nouns after *into*:

**bits, parts, pieces, slices, wedges**

#### **4. Into can indicate a change in condition or form.**

**Pattern 1** go/get + *into* + noun

*They went into debt after the accident.*

*He always gets into trouble at school.*

Nouns often used after *go into*:

**action, bankruptcy, debt**

Nouns used after *get into*:

**danger, condition, shape, trouble**

**Pattern 2** go/get + *into* + noun

*He went into a rage.*

*They got into an argument.*

Typical nouns after *go into*:

**a fit, hysterics, a rage, a tantrum**

Typical nouns after *get into*:

**an argument, a good/bad mood**

#### **Related Expressions**

**to turn into** to change into a different form

*The water turned into ice.*

*The stranger turned into a friend.*

**to turn something into** to change the form of something else

*The witch turned the prince into a frog.*

**to burst into flames** to suddenly be on fire

*The trash pile **burst into flames**.*

**to get into hot water** to get into trouble

*We **got into hot water** for skipping class.*

## 5. Into can indicate **interest** or **occupation**.

**Pattern** *be/go + into + noun*

*Her husband **is** really **into** football.*

*All of her daughters **went into** law.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**break into** (nonseparable) begin an activity

*She was so excited that she **broke into** a song.*

**check into** (nonseparable) get information, investigate

*After she called the police, they went to **check into** the situation.*

**look into** (nonseparable) get information, investigate

*The lawyer promised to **look into** our case.*

**run into** (nonseparable) to see an acquaintance by chance

*We **ran into** each other at the mall yesterday.*

**talk into** (separable) to convince someone to do something

*She didn't want to come with us, but I **talked her into** it.*

## PRACTICE

### 36-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ into the room and started shouting orders.

threw

gazed

stomped

fell

2. She has to start saving money or she will go into \_\_\_\_\_.

jail

debt

poverty

trouble

3. They are always getting into \_\_\_\_\_.

trouble

football

jail

a frog

**36-2. Use an expression with *into* to express the following:**

1. I don't want the teacher to catch me doing something wrong!

**36-3. Use a phrasal verb with *into* to express the following:**

1. They convinced me to go with them.
2. I wonder if I'll see anybody I know at the game.

## UNIT 37:

# Like

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Like can mean **similar to**.

**Pattern** *be, look, seem* + **like** + **noun**

*She **is like** her sister.*

*They don't **look like** their mother.*

#### 2. Like can indicate **similar behavior**.

**Pattern** **verb** + **like** + **noun**

*He talks **like** his father.*

*She swims **like** a duck.*

Common verbs before *like*:

**act, behave, play, sing, talk, walk**

#### 3. Like can describe excessive behavior.

**Pattern** **verb** + **noun** + **like** + **abstract noun**

*She spends money **like** water.*

Nouns commonly used with this meaning:

**anything, water**

### Related Expressions

**like crazy** a lot, excessively

**like mad** a lot; excessively

*He dances **like** crazy.*

*She works **like** mad.*

#### 4. Like can indicate an **example**.

**Pattern** noun + *like* + noun

*They grow root vegetables **like** beets, carrots, radishes, and turnips.*

#### 5. Like can mean **characteristic of**.

**Pattern** *be* + *like* + noun + *to* + verb

*It's not **like** you *to* complain.*

### PRACTICE

#### 37-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. I like tropical fruit, like \_\_\_\_\_.

apples

pears

mangoes

cherries

2. She never stops dancing. She dances like \_\_\_\_\_.

crazy

silly

pretty

graceful

3. He is very cooperative. It's not like him to \_\_\_\_\_.

be quiet

be silly

argue

be normal

## UNIT 38:

# Near

### Basic Meanings

1. **Near** means **close to** in terms of distance.

*His house is **near** his office.*

*She lives **near** San Francisco.*

2. **Near** means **within a short time**.

*His birthday is **near** Thanksgiving.*

### PRACTICE

- 38-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. We both have birthdays in April. Her birthday is \_\_\_\_\_ mine.

like

near

far from

next to

2. The librarian's house is two blocks from the library. She lives near \_\_\_\_\_.

her job

the school

the drugstore

her gym

## UNIT 39:

# Next To

### Basic Meaning

#### 1. Next to means at the side of.

*Her best friend sits **next to** her at the table.*

*I will put my things in the basket **next to** yours.*

### PRACTICE

#### 39-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. Charlotte is going to sit next to \_\_\_\_\_ in the cafeteria.

me and Taylor

Taylor and I

I and Kim

you and he

2. Basketball is my second favorite game, next to baseball. Baseball is my \_\_\_\_\_.

best

worst

second favorite

favorite

## UNIT 40:

# Of

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Of indicates **belonging** or **connection**.

a. *Of* identifies a thing as a connection or **part of another thing**.

**the pages of the book**

**the leaves of the tree**

b. *Of* identifies people, animals, or plants as **part of a larger group**.

**Pattern** noun + *of* + *this/that* + noun

*the women of that family*

*the people of that religion*

Nouns commonly used after *of*:

**city, club, company, country, culture, descent, faith, family, gender, genus, group, ilk, organization, race, religion, society, species**

c. *Of* identifies ideas or **works with their author**, artist, or composer.

**Pattern** noun + *of* + noun

*the works of Shakespeare*

*the methods of the teacher*

Nouns often used before *of*:

**essays, ideas, method, music, novels, opinion, paintings, plays, poems, poetry, songs, work, writing**

d. *Of* identifies an individual or **special member of a group** or institution.

**Pattern** noun + *of* + noun

*the president of the class*

*the coordinators of the program*

Nouns commonly used before *of*:



**captain, citizen, coordinator, dictator, head, hero, heroine, leader, loser, manager, mayor, member, president, secretary, servant, star, student, teacher, treasurer, villain, winner**

e. *Of* identifies a **person's occupation** or area of specialization.

**Pattern** noun + *of* + noun

*a professor of mathematics*

*students of cardiology*

*practitioner of medicine*

f. *Of* indicates a **connection with a place**.

**Pattern** noun + *of* + noun

*a native of Alaska*

*the birds and animals of Australia*

Nouns often used before *of*:

**animal, bird, citizen, graduate, inhabitant, native, people, resident**

g. *Of* indicates a **connection with a period of time**.

*the music of the eighties*

*the dances of her youth*

*the fourth of July*

*the last day of the year*

*April of last year*

**2. Of** can name another noun.

**Pattern** *the* + noun + *of* + noun

*They established the city of Los Angeles.*

*It is near the Bay of Bengal.*

*I don't know the name of the school.*

**3. Of** can indicate the **location of a part**.

**Pattern** preposition + *the* + noun + *of* + noun

*The passage is in the middle of the page.*

*I have a knot on the back of my head.*

*The numbers are at the top of the page.*

#### 4. Of indicates a **category of description**.

**Pattern** noun + *of* + noun

a. Typical nouns used before *of* indicating **category**:

**brand, category, class, color, form, kind, make, pattern, shape, size, sort, style, type**

*What kind **of** shoes are you looking for?*

*The color **of** your dress is beautiful.*

b. Nouns used before *of* indicating type of **container**:

**bag, bowl, box, can, container, load, loaf, package, piece, plate, tube**

*We bought two boxes **of** cereal.*

c. Nouns used before *of* indicating **sensation**:

**feel, sense, smell, sound, taste, texture**

*I didn't like the smell **of** that meat.*

d. Nouns before *of* indicating **value**:

**cost, price, value**

*The price **of** the dress was outrageous.*

e. Nouns before *of* indicating **measurement**:

**depth, height, length, measurement, weight, width**

*Do you know the measurement **of** your waist?*

#### 5. Of indicates a **number or proportion**.

**Pattern 1** number/adjective + *of* + plural noun

*Three **of** the girls are our daughters.*

*All **of** the women are from New York.*

Adjectives used before *of*:

**all numbers**

**all, another, any, both, each, either, enough, few, many, most, neither, none, plenty, several, some**

**Pattern 2** noun + *of* + plural noun

*That store has a couple **of** books I want to buy.*

*A few **of** them are hard to find.*

Nouns used before *of*:

**a couple, a few, a lot, lots**

**Pattern 3** adjective + *of* + noncount noun

*Much of the furniture is damaged.*

Adjectives used before *of*:

**all, little, much, some**

**Pattern 4** noun + *of* + noncount noun

*A little of the information is correct.*

*A lot of it is incorrect.*

Nouns used before *of*:

**a little, a lot, lots**

## **6. Of can identify abstract nouns by their source.**

a. sound

**Pattern** *the* + noun + *of* + noun

*I heard the cry of a baby.*

*There was the noise of a car.*

Nouns of sound commonly used before *of*:

**buzz, crash, cry, growl, hiss, howl, hum, hush, laughter, music, noise, silence, sound, whisper**

b. force

**Pattern** noun + *of* + noun

*A gust of wind blew in my face.*

*We all need a breath of fresh air.*

Nouns of force often used before *of*:

**breath, gush, rush, whiff**

c. sight

**Pattern** noun + *of* + noun

*She had a vision of musicians playing violins.*

*The blue of her eyes was the color of the ocean.*

Nouns of sight often used before *of*:

**blue, color, picture, sight, vision**

d. sensation

**Pattern** *the* + noun + *of* + noun

*The touch of his hand made me feel safe.*

*The smell of bread baking was wonderful.*

Nouns of feeling often used before *of*:

**feel, sense, smell, taste, texture, touch**

e. expression

**Pattern** noun + *of* + noun

*He shouted words of anger.*

*She breathed a sigh of relief.*

Nouns of expression often used before *of*:

**cry, groan, moan, shout, sigh, smile, tears, word**

Nouns of feeling often used after *of*:

**anger, anguish, delight, elation, excitement, fear, frustration, happiness, joy, relief, sadness, surprise**

## 7. **Of** can indicate **material** or **composition**.

**Pattern** noun + *be* + past participle + *of* + noun

*My new bag is made of leather.*

*Water is made up of hydrogen and oxygen.*

Past participles used before *of*:

**composed, formed, made, made up (used with natural phenomena)**

Nouns often used after *of*:

**aluminum, brass, cardboard, clay, copper, cotton, crystal, fabric, glass, gold, iron, jute, leather, metal, nylon, paper, plastic, platinum, polyester, rayon, sand, silk, silver, string, tin, water, wire, wood, wool**

## 8. **Of** can identify **contents** or **topic**.

**Pattern 1** noun + *of* + noun

*She ate a salad of lettuce, tomatoes, and avocados.*

*My uncle wrote a book of short stories.*

*The book has pictures of flowers.*

*A group **of** students went to the museum.*

Common expressions:

**words of love, a sign of weakness, a method of teaching**

**Pattern 2** verb + **of** + noun

*I dreamed **of** you.*

*They often talked **of** their youth.*

Verbs commonly used before *of*:

**complain, dream, hear, learn, sing, speak, talk, think**

**Pattern 3** verb + noun + **of** + noun

*She informed me **of** my appointment.*

Verbs used with this pattern:

**advise, inform, remind, tell**

**Pattern 4** adjective + **of** + noun

*She is capable **of** better work.*

*They are independent **of** their parents.*

Adjectives commonly used with this pattern:

**capable, ignorant, proud, repentant, sick, tired**

## **Related Expression**

**be reminiscent of** to remind someone of

*Your perfume **is reminiscent of** my mother.*

## **9. Of can indicate dedication of time to a special purpose.**

**Pattern** noun + **of** + noun

*That was a day **of** national mourning.*

*We stood for a moment **of** silence.*

Nouns often used before *of*:

**day, moment, month, period, season, semester, time, week, year**

Nouns often used after *of*:

**celebration, exercise, festivity, fun, happiness, meditation, mourning, prayer, quiet, reading, reflection, rest, silence, studying, thanksgiving, work**

## 10. Of can indicate **absence**.

**Pattern** noun + *of* + noun

*There is a need **of** cooperation.*

*The lack **of** funds is our biggest problem.*

Nouns commonly used before *of*:

**absence, dearth, necessity, need, lack, paucity, scarcity**

## 11. Of can indicate **separation**.

**Pattern 1** verb + *of* + noun

*He was cured **of** cancer.*

*The dog died **of** old age.*

*She is rid **of** a nuisance.*

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *of* + noun

*They tried to relieve her **of** pain.*

## Related Expression

**to get rid of** to cause to no longer have

*I got rid **of** my old car.*

## 12. Of can indicate one's **feelings** toward the object.

**Pattern 1** noun + *of* + noun

*We appreciate the pleasure **of** your company.*

*He has a love **of** learning.*

Nouns often used before *of*:

**anguish, challenge, delight, desire, distrust, enjoyment, excitement, fear, frustration, happiness, hatred, joy, love, need, pleasure, stress**

**Pattern 2** *to the* + noun + *of* + noun

*We had a big party, **to the** delight **of** the children.*

Nouns often used before *of*:

**anguish, annoyance, delight, disgust, enjoyment, excitement, happiness, pleasure**

### 13. Of can indicate an **attitude** toward something.

**Pattern** *be* + adjective + *of* + noun

*They **are** respectful **of** the environment.*

Adjectives commonly used before *of*:

ashamed, aware, certain, conscious, disrespectful, envious, fond, inconsiderate, mindful, proud, repentant, respectful, sure, suspicious, trusting, uncertain, unsure, wary

### 14. Of can indicate a **reason**.

*I came here because **of** you.*

*She lost all her money on account **of** her husband.*

### 15. Of can describe **behavior**.

**Pattern** *be* + adjective + *of* + noun

*It **was** very kind **of** Sally to help us.*

*It **was** cruel **of** him to ignore her.*

Adjectives commonly used with this pattern:

bad, careless, conscientious, crazy, crude, cruel, delightful, evil, good, hateful, ignorant, irresponsible, kind, mean, nice, responsible, rude, selfish, sweet, thoughtful, thoughtless, typical, unconscionable

### 16. Of can **describe** a noun by connecting it to a quality.

**Pattern** noun + *of* + noun

*She is a woman **of** honor.*

*They are people **of** integrity.*

Nouns of quality often used after *of*:

dignity, faith, few words, good intentions, honor, integrity, high (low) morals, strength, wisdom

## Expressions

a **cxmle** of scenery/pace a **cxmle** in place or activity

*We needed **a cxmle of scenery**, so we went to the Caribbean.*

**right of way** the legal right to proceed before another person

*The accident was the other driver's fault because I had the **right of way**.*

## PRACTICE

### 40-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. *A, B, and C* are the first letters of \_\_\_\_\_.  
my name                      your name                      Mrs. Jackson                      the alphabet
2. The opinions of the English teacher are \_\_\_\_\_.  
poetry                      spelling                      private                      writing
3. She teaches algebra. She's a professor of \_\_\_\_\_.  
numbers                      girls                      students                      mathematics
4. Independence Day in the United States is the \_\_\_\_\_ of July.  
four                      fourth                      forth                      day
5. We bought six \_\_\_\_\_ of bread to make sandwiches for the party.  
loaves                      loaf                      halves                      box
6. You can hear the \_\_\_\_\_ of the helicopters inside the house.  
song                      music                      noise                      talking
7. I only want two pieces of fruit. Please give me \_\_\_\_\_ of bananas.  
a couple                      pair                      twice                      a bunch
8. His blue eyes were the color of \_\_\_\_\_.  
money                      paint                      the sky                      blood
9. I gave away all of my old sweaters. I got \_\_\_\_\_ of them.  
new                      old                      twenty                      rid
10. He won the election, to the \_\_\_\_\_ of his opponents.  
happiness                      excitement                      disgust                      relief

### 40-2. Use an expression with *of* to express the following:

1. I didn't have the legal right to drive in that lane.
2. We needed to get away, and took a trip to the beach.



## UNIT 41:

# off

### Basic Meanings

1. **Off** indicates **movement** from one place to another.

**Pattern 1** verb + *off* + noun

*The car ran **off** the road.*

*We got **off** the train in New Orleans.*

Verbs used with this pattern:

**blow, come, dive, drive, fall, get, go, hop, jump, limp, move, roll, run, slide, slip, walk**

### Related Expression

**to be off** (adverb) to leave

*It's late, so we must **be off**.*

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *off* + noun

*They shoveled the snow **off** the driveway.*

Verbs used with this pattern:

**blow, brush, clean, clear, drive, get, move, pull, push, roll, run, scrape, shove, shovel, slide, slip, sweep, take, wash**

2. **Off** can indicate **separation**.

**Pattern** verb + *off* + noun

*She cut **off** her beautiful long hair.*

Verbs commonly used with this meaning:

**break, chop, cut, pick, pull, saw, send, shave, take, tear, throw**

### 3. Off means **connected to** or **not far from**.

**Pattern** *be + off + noun*

*Our street **is off** Main Street.*

Typical nouns after *off*:

**beach, coast, highway, island, road, street, turnpike**

### 4. Off can indicate **behavior** that is not as usual or no longer true.

**Pattern 1** *be/go + off + noun*

*The children **are off** school today.*

*I'm glad your cousin finally **went off** drugs.*

Nouns commonly used with this meaning:

**alcohol, cigarettes, drugs, duty, school, work**

**Pattern 2** *be/go + off + one's + noun*

*She **went off** her diet again.*

Typical nouns:

**diet, medication, medicine, pills**

### Related Expressions

**to be off course** to be going (or thinking) in the wrong direction

*We got lost, and **were off course** for about three hours.*

*They **got off course** while doing the research, and wasted a lot of time.*

**to be off one's game** not be playing as well as usual

*The golf champion **was off his game** yesterday.*

**to be off one's rocker** to be crazy

*She feeds caviar to her cat; I think **she's off her rocker**.*

### 5. Off can indicate **lack of contact**.

**Pattern 1** *verb + off + noun*

*Please keep **off** the grass.*

Verbs used with this pattern:

**get, keep, lay, stay**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *off* + noun

*Please keep the dog off the grass.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

**get, keep, move, take**

**6. Off means cause to stop functioning.**

**Pattern** verb + *off* + noun

*Please turn off the radio.*

Typical verbs with this meaning:

**shut, switch, turn**

Typical nouns after *off*:

**the music, the lights, the machine, the air conditioning, the heat, the motor, the cellphone, the computer**

**Expressions**

**off the record** not official or public

*This is off the record, but I heard that our friends got married last week.*

**off the charts** too high or successful to measure

*Our ratings are off the charts.*

**off the wall** unacceptable

*I'm sorry, but your ideas are really off the wall.*

**off chance** (noun) unlikely possibility

*I stopped by, on the off chance that you would be at home.*

**off-limits** (adverb) forbidden territory

*The bars are off-limits for teenagers.*

**off-color** (adjective) in very bad taste, with a sexual reference

*I can't believe that she tells so many off-color jokes.*

**offhand** (adjective, adverb) very casual, casually

*He made a few offhand remarks that I didn't appreciate.*

**hit it off** to become friends right away

*Your sister and my brother really hit it off at the party.*

**be well off** to have few problems

*Now that she has retired, she **is** pretty **well off**.*

**be better/worse off** to have fewer or more problems

*She **is** a lot **better off** than she was before.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**back off** (intransitive) stop trying

*The man was too aggressive and was told to **back off**.*

**beg off** (intransitive) cancel a commitment

*Our babysitter didn't come; she **begged off** at the last minute.*

**break off** (separable) terminate a relationship

*They couldn't agree on anything, so they **broke off** their engagement.*

**call off** (separable) cancel an event

*We **called** the picnic **off** because of rain.*

**check off** (separable) mark on a list

*She knows I was there; she **checked off** my name.*

**drop off** (intransitive) fall asleep

*She kept **dropping off** during the meeting.*

**get off** (nonseparable) leave a vehicle you can walk around on

*We **got off** the ship in Jamaica.*

**get off** (separable) remove, with some difficulty

*She's trying to **get** the mud **off** her shoes.*

**goof off** waste time

*Stop **goofing off** and get to work!*

**kick off** (intransitive) the beginning of an event

*The conference starts tomorrow; it will probably **kick off** at about ten.*

**kill off** (separable) to destroy all members of a species

*There is a danger that certain birds will be **killed off**.*

**knock off** (separable) to stop doing something

*I'm sick of your teasing. **Knock** it **off**!*

**lay off** (separable) fire from a job

*They didn't need so many workers, so they **laid** him **off**.*

**live off** (nonseparable) eat nothing but

*We have been **living off** fruit and vegetables for weeks.*

**mark off** (separable) to designate areas for a game

*They are **marking** the field **off** for the soccer match.*

**nod off** fall asleep

*He is jet-lagged, and keeps **nodding off** during the day.*

**pull off** (separable) manage to achieve success

*The clients were difficult, but he managed to **pull off** the sale.*

**put off** (separable) postpone

*They **put** the picnic **off** until Tuesday.*

**put off** (separable) repel

*They didn't invite her back; her bad manners really **put** them **off**.*

**round off** (separable) use the nearest whole number

*Don't use all those fractions; **round off** all the numbers.*

**sell off** (separable) to sell everything

*He **sold off** all his property and left town.*

**sign off** (intransitive) to end a program

*My favorite radio announcer **signs off** at midnight.*

**take off** (intransitive) leave

*The plane **took off** at four-thirty.*

**take off** (separable) remove clothing

*The sweater was too warm so he **took** it **off**.*

**wear off** (separable) to disappear because of wear

*I **wore off** the tread on my tires when I drove to California.*

**wipe off** (separable) to erase; to destroy completely

*The gunman **wiped** his fingerprints **off** the weapon.*

**write off** (separable) to no longer consider someone or something to be of value

*He **wrote off** his sister when she got into trouble.*

*He **wrote off** the money she owed him, as he knew she would never pay it back.*

## PRACTICE

41-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ off the diving board and made a beautiful dive.  
                     slipped                      jumped                      fell                      walked
2. Our house is just off the highway. It is \_\_\_\_\_ the highway.  
                     close to                      far from                      on                      in
3. The children have a holiday today. They are off \_\_\_\_\_.  
                     cruise                      birthday party                      school                      vacation
4. It's way too bright in here. Please turn off the \_\_\_\_\_.  
                     air conditioning                      lights                      music                      heater

**41-2. Use an expression with *off* to express the following:**

1. This is not official, but I heard that the teacher is going to a different school.
2. His behavior is totally unacceptable.
3. The kids are not allowed to go to that bar.
4. My friends really liked my sister.
5. Her situation has improved.

**41-3. Use a phrasal verb with *off* to express the following:**

1. They cancelled their wedding.
2. I was falling asleep during the meeting.
3. Hey—stop bullying!
4. He was fired from his job because there were too many workers.
5. Nobody liked his bad manners.
6. What time does your plane leave?

## UNIT 42:

# On

### Basic Meanings

1. **On** indicates location **higher than something and touching it; on top of.**

**Pattern** *on* + noun

*The newspaper is **on** the table.*

*Please sign your name **on** the dotted line.*

2. **On** indicates an **outside location.**

**Pattern** *on* + *the* + noun

*He was standing **on the** corner of First Street and Maple Avenue.*

*Let's have a barbecue **on the** balcony.*

Typical nouns after *on the*:

**balcony, beach, corner, fence, field, ground, hill, horizon, lawn, patio, porch, roof, terrace**

3. **On** indicates a **surface location.**

**Pattern 1** *on* + *the* + noun

*She rides her bicycle **on the** sidewalk.*

Typical nouns after *on the*:

**boardwalk, court, (baseball) diamond, field, highway, path, rink, road, rocks, screen, sidewalk, street**

**Pattern 2** *on* + noun

*That is the only place **on** earth where she feels safe.*

Typical nouns after *on*:

earth, land, page one (or any other number), solid ground, water

**4. On indicates certain inside surface locations.**

**Pattern** *on + the + noun*

*There is a fly **on the** ceiling.*

Typical nouns after *on the*:

**ceiling, floor, stairs, steps, wall, window first/second (or other number) floor**

**5. On indicates surface contact.**

**Pattern** *verb + noun + on + noun*

*The child pasted the picture **on** the page.*

Typical verbs:

**glue, hold, paste, stick**

**6. On indicates location in a part of an area.**

**Pattern** *be + on + the + noun + of + noun*

*The porch **is on the** side **of** the house.*

Typical nouns after *on the*:

**border, bottom, edge, end, exterior, inside, interior, left, outside, outskirts, first/second (or other number) page, right, side, surface, top**

**7. On means facing.**

**Pattern** *be + on + noun*

*Their house **is on** the beach.*

*What street **is** your house **on**?*

Typical nouns:

**beach, highway, river, road, street**

**8. On indicates movement to something; onto.**

**Pattern 1** *verb + on + noun*

*It rained **on** your bicycle last night.*



*She jumped **on** the bed.*

Typical verbs before *on*:

**bounce, climb, fall, get, hop, jump, knock, pounce, pound, rain, stamp, step, tread**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *on* + noun

*She poured water **on** the plant.*

*He sprinkled salt **on** the meat.*

Typical verbs:

**drip, drop, load, pour, put, shower, smear, spill, splash, spray, spread, sprinkle, squirt, throw**

## **9. On indicates travel in vehicles in which one can walk.**

*She goes to work **on** the bus.*

*They went **on** the train to Philadelphia.*

Typical nouns:

**airplane, bus, ship, train**

Typical verbs used before *on*:

**get, go, ride, sit, travel**

## **10. On indicates an individual method of travel.**

*He came over **on** his bike.*

*She was sore from riding **on** a horse.*

Typical nouns:

**all fours, bicycle, foot, one's hands and knees, motorcycle, roller blades, scooter, skateboard, skates, skis, sled, snowboard, surfboard, tiptoe, tricycle**

## **11. On means wearing.**

**Pattern 1** verb + *on* + noun

*The man has **on** a suit and tie.*

*The lady put **on** her new dress.*

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *on* + noun

*She put the bracelet **on** her wrist.*

*He had a hat **on** his head.*

Typical verbs:

**get, have, keep, put, try, wear**

## **Related Expression**

**to put on** to get dressed in

*She **put on** her shoes and went out.*

## **12. On indicates physical support.**

**Pattern 1** verb + **on** + noun

*The child leaned **on** his father.*

*The children sat **on** small chairs.*

Typical verbs used before *on*:

**cling, hang, lean, lie, rest, sit, sleep, stand**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + **on** + noun

*She draped the cloth **on** the table.*

*He laid the sick child **on** the bed.*

Typical verbs:

**drape, hang, lay, place, put**

**Pattern 3** *be* + **on** + noun

*The beads **are on** a string.*

*The popsicle **is on** a stick.*

## **Related Expression**

**to be on one's side** to support in spirit

*They are my friends; I'm sure they **are on my side**.*

## **13. On can indicate trust in something or someone.**

**Pattern 1** verb + **on** + noun

*He relies **on** me to pay his rent.*

Typical verbs used before *on*:

**bank, bet, count, depend, rely**

**Pattern 2** *be* + adjective + *on* + noun

*She is dependent on her husband.*

Adjectives used before *on*:

**based, dependent, predicated**

#### **14. On can indicate frequency.**

**Pattern** *on* +  $\emptyset$  noun

*He visits twice a month on average.*

Nouns commonly used after *on*:

**average, occasion, weekends, Saturdays (or other days) nice (or other adjective) mornings, afternoons, evenings, nights**

#### **15. On can indicate a form of record.**

**Pattern** *on* +  $\emptyset$  noun

*He wrote it on paper.*

*They recorded the song on tape.*

Typical nouns:

**cassette, compact disc, disk, film, microfilm, paper, record, tape**

#### **16. On means by means of.**

**Pattern 1** verb + *on* + noun

*That car runs on diesel fuel.*

*They survive on very little food.*

Typical verbs used before *on*:

**gain/lose weight, keep alive, live, make do, run, scrape by, survive, thrive, train**

Typical nouns used after *on*:

**calories, electricity, food, fuel, gas, income, salary**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *on* + noun

*I bought the furniture on credit.*

*He wrote his paper **on** the computer.*

**17. On** can mean **using** at the present time.

**Pattern** *be* + **on** + *the* + noun

*The manager can't help you now; she **is on the** telephone.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

**computer, Internet, machine, telephone**

**Expression**

**to log on** to connect to the Internet

*Don't interrupt him now; he has just **logged on**.*

**18. On** can indicate the **cause of a mishap**.

**Pattern 1** verb + noun + **on** + noun

*I cut my finger **on** a piece of glass.*

*She hurt herself **on** the swing.*

**Pattern 2** verb + **on** + noun

*He tripped **on** a fallen branch.*

Verbs commonly used before *on*:

**choke, fall, stumble, trip**

**19. On** can indicate a **motive for action**.

**Pattern 1** verb + **on** + noun

*They went to Houston **on** business.*

Nouns used after *on*:

**business, command, instinct, reconnaissance, request, sabbatical, spec, vacation**

**Related Expressions**

**on purpose** deliberately

*She didn't want to see him; she stayed home **on purpose**.*

**on behalf of** in place of, for the sake of

*I went to the meeting **on behalf of** my mother, who was out of town.*

**on account of** because of

*The picnic was canceled on account of the rain.*

**Pattern 2** *on + the + noun + of*

*They went overseas **on the** orders **of** the commander.*

*I bought the car **on the** recommendation **of** my son.*

Typical nouns:

**advice, assumption, authority, calculations, charge, orders, premise, recommendation**

## 20. On can indicate a type of trip.

**Pattern** *verb + on + noun*

*The class went **on** an excursion around the city.*

Nouns used after *on*:

**cruise, excursion, field trip, flight, honeymoon, journey, mission, outing, safari, trip**

## 21. On can indicate a topic.

**Pattern 1** *noun + on + noun*

*We have a good book **on** gardening.*

*He wrote a long article **on** the economy.*

Typical nouns before *on*:

**article, book, debate, discussion, paper, report, research, speech, thesis, thoughts**

**Pattern 2** *verb + on + noun*

*She spoke **on** the environment.*

*I wish he would expound **on** his ideas.*

Typical verbs before *on*:

**expound, report, speak, write**

## 22. On can show an effect of something on something else.

**Pattern** noun + *on* + noun

*We got a good buy **on** our car.*

*There is a new tax **on** perfume.*

Typical nouns used before *on*:

**ban, discount, embargo, encumbrance, evidence, good buy, restriction, sale, tax, war**

**23. On** can indicate **possession** at the time.

*She had four dollars **on** her.*

*He didn't have a gun **on** him.*

**24. On** can indicate **membership** in an exclusive group.

**Pattern** *be* + *on* + *the* + noun

*She **is on the** basketball team and the honor roll.*

Typical nouns after *on*:

**board, committee, council, crew, faculty, honor roll, jury, list, payroll, squad, staff, team**

**25. On** can indicate an **occasion**.

**Pattern 1** *on* + noun

*Congratulations **on** your graduation.*

*They went out to dinner **on** their anniversary.*

Typical nouns:

**anniversary, arrival, birth, birthday, death, departure, news, occasion, wedding, weekend**

**Pattern 2** *on* + *o* noun

*They are leaving **on** Saturday (or any day).*

**Pattern 3** *on* + *the* + noun

Example:

*We are leaving **on the** ninth of August (or any date).*

*They are going to New York **on the** weekend.*

## 26. On (adverb) can indicate **continuation**.

**Pattern** verb + **on**

*They told us to move **on**.*

*He was tired, but he drove **on**.*

Typical verbs:

**drag, drive, go, keep, live, move, press, read, run, talk, walk, work**

## Related Expression

**keep on + gerund** continue to do something

*She told us to **keep on** reading.*

## 27. On expresses **offensive action**.

**Pattern 1** verb + **on** + noun

*The troops marched **on** the city at dawn.*

Typical expressions before **on**:

**march, turn**

**pull a gun, pull a knife**

**Pattern 2** noun + **on** + noun

*They planned a raid **on** the nightclub.*

Typical nouns:

**assault, attack, march, raid**

## 28. On can indicate a **state** or condition.

**Pattern 1** **be + on + noun**

*The new windows **are on** order.*

*Our new line of products **is on** display at the showroom.*

Typical nouns:

**approval, board, call, course, display, duty, edge, fire, guard, high/low speed, high/low volume, hold, leave, loan, one's best behavior, order, parole, record, sale, schedule, stand-by, strike, tap, target, track, trial, vacation**

## Related Expressions

**on the whole** weighing the good against the bad

***On the whole** they enjoy their work.*

**on hand** available

*He is always **on hand** to help us.*

**online** connected to the Internet

*Every day more and more people are **online**.*

**on one's own** independent

*He is twenty-one and he lives **on his own**.*

**Pattern 2** *be* + **on** + *a/the* + noun

*She is **on a** diet.*

Typical nouns with *a*:

**budget, diet, roll, spree**

## Related Expressions

**on a roll** to be experiencing repeated success

*He has received four job offers; he is **on a roll**.*

Typical nouns with *the*:

**brink, edge, line, mark, way on the spot** to be forced to make a difficult decision

*The young man was **on the spot** when his two best friends had an argument.*

**on the fence** to be undecided

*The congressman hasn't decided which way to vote: he is **on the fence**.*

**on the air** to be broadcasting on the radio or television

*The news is **on the air** at six o'clock.*

**on the bench** to be the judge in court

*Do you know who is **on the bench** at her trial?*

**on the blink** to be broken

*We can't copy it; the copier is **on the blink**.*

**on the road** to be traveling

*Our band is going to be **on the road** for two weeks.*

**on the condition that** if

*You can go on the trip **on the condition** that you pay for it.*



## 29. On can indicate means of communication.

*I heard it **on** the radio.*

*There are a lot of movies **on** television.*

*She found it **on** the Internet.*

## Related Expression

**to go viral on the Internet/a form of social media** to appear digitally rapidly

*Her video went viral **on** the Internet.*

## 30. On can indicate the person who pays.

*The party is **on** me.*

## Expression

**on the house** paid for by the management of the restaurant

*The drinks are **on the house**.*

## 31. On can mean at the same time as.

**Pattern 1** **on + verb in gerund form**

*She fainted **on** hearing the news.*

**Pattern 2** **on + noun**

*She feeds the baby **on** demand.*

*The car is yours **on** receipt of the title.*

Typical nouns after *on*:

**approval, demand, receipt, reflection, second thought, sight**

## 32. On can indicate acquisition.

**Pattern 1** **verb + on + noun**

*They took **on** five new technicians at the plant.*

*She wanted to add **on** a family room.*

Typical verbs used before *on*:

**add, bring, build, heap, load, pile, put, take**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *on* + noun

*They forced a new assistant **on** us.*

Typical verbs used before *on*:

**add, build, force, heap, load, pile, push, put**

**Related Expression**

**to put on** to get dressed in

*She **put on** her shoes and went out.*

**33. On** can indicate **attitude toward the object.**

*Please have pity **on** the people who live there.*

*They agree **on** the important issues.*

**Related Expression**

**have a crush on** to have a frivolous romantic interest in

*The young boy **had a crush on** his teacher.*

**34. On** can indicate **behavior concerning the object.**

**Pattern 1** *be* + adjective + *on* + noun

*The teacher **is much too easy on** the boys.*

*I think I **was too rough on** her yesterday.*

Typical adjectives before *on*:

**easy, hard, rough, soft, strict, tough**

**Pattern 2** verb + *on* + noun

*The old lady doted **on** her only grandchild.*

Typical verbs before *on*:

**center, concentrate, dote, dwell, err, harp, pick, prey, put pressure, wait**

**Related Expression**

**to lay hands on** to attack

*If someone **lays hands on** you, call the police.*

### 35. On can indicate a **consequence to another person**.

**Pattern** verb + **on** + noun

*We were on a family vacation and my brother got sick **on** us.*

*Please don't fall asleep **on** me; I need you to keep me awake.*

Typical verbs:

**cheat, die, faint, fall asleep, get sick, go quiet, rat, tattle, tell**

### Expressions

**on time** at the expected time

*Mary is always **on time** for class.*

**on the contrary** the opposite is true

*We don't have too many books; **on the contrary**, we don't have enough.*

**on the other hand** from another viewpoint

*She is never on time; **on the other hand**, she is a very hard worker.*

**on the tip of my tongue** refers to something almost remembered, but not quite

*I can't remember his name, but it's right **on the tip of my tongue**.*

**on your mark** the first command of three at the start of a race

***On your mark**, get set, go!*

**to depend on** the outcome is decided by a future event

*I want to have the party outside, but it **depends on** the weather.*

### Phrasal Verbs

**call on** (nonseparable) ask

*If you need help, **call on** me.*

**carry on** (intransitive) to behave a little wildly

*She **carries on** every night.*

**carry on with** (nonseparable) continue an effort

*Who is going to **carry on with** the program when he leaves?*

**catch on** (intransitive) understand

*My sister isn't interested in him; I'm afraid he will never **catch on**.*

**get on** (nonseparable) enter a vehicle you can walk around on; mount a horse or bicycle

*We **got on** the bus in New York.*

**get on** (separable) dress with slight difficulty

*See if you can **get** these shoes **on**.*

**get on** (intransitive) grow old

*She is **getting on**; she is eighty-seven now.*

**log on** (intransitive) to connect to the Internet

*She **logged on** to the Internet to communicate with her friend across the country.*

**miss out on** lose an opportunity

*He **missed out on** a good party.*

**pass on** (separable) tell or give to somebody else

*When you have finished reading this article, please **pass** it **on**.*

**pick on** (nonseparable) selectively mistreat

*That teacher likes the boys but **picks on** the girls.*

**turn on** (separable) cause to function

*First, you have to **turn** the machine **on**.*

## PRACTICE

### 42-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. I saw him outside, \_\_\_\_\_ on the corner.

holding

pleasing

standing

driving

2. When we're at the beach, we like to walk on the \_\_\_\_\_.

corner

water

sidewalk

boardwalk

3. Our garage is on the left side of the \_\_\_\_\_.

house

page

inside

paper

4. Is your house on this \_\_\_\_\_?

city

town

street

neighborhood

5. The baby can't walk yet, but he gets around on his \_\_\_\_\_.

motorcycle

bike

hands and knees

skateboard

6. Please keep your \_\_\_\_\_ on, so you don't get cold.

necktie

gloves

bathing suit

necklace

7. They always go to the movies on \_\_\_\_\_.

evenings

mornings

weekends

weekend

8. The senator spoke on \_\_\_\_\_.

health care

roller skates

newspaper

magazine

9. She's busy after school, because she's on the \_\_\_\_\_.

gym

basketball team

driveway

practice

10. The parts needed to fix my car aren't here, but they are on \_\_\_\_\_.

time

line

mechanic

order

**42-2. Use an expression with *on* to express the following:**

1. I'm trying to connect to the Internet.
2. My computer isn't working.
3. Elena is never late.
4. She has a silly romantic interest in the camp counselor.
5. 1-2-3-GO!

**42-3. Use a phrasal verb with *on* to express the following:**

1. We have to board the bus now.
2. It's hard for her to get dressed.
3. It's too bad you couldn't go to the party.
4. Don't let those bullies tease your little sister.
5. You can connect to the Internet here.

## UNIT 43:

# Onto

### Basic Meanings

1. **Onto** indicates **movement** from one position to another one.

**Pattern 1** verb + *onto* + noun

*The child hopped **onto** the bed.*

Typical verbs used before *onto*:

**drip, fall, hop, jump, move, run, spill, step**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *onto* + noun

*We moved all the books **onto** the desk.*

Typical verbs used with this pattern:

**drip, drop, move, spill, transfer**

2. **Onto** indicates **knowledge of misbehavior**.

**Pattern** *be* + *onto* + noun.

*The police **are onto** that gang about the missing money.*

### PRACTICE

43-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. The milk spilled all over the counter, and then onto the \_\_\_\_\_.

floor

top

bowl

glass

2. He \_\_\_\_\_ on the test, but the teacher is onto him.

failed

wrote

cheated

passed

## UNIT 44:

# On Top Of

## Basic Meaning

- 1. On top of** indicates a position **higher than the object, and usually touching it.**

**Pattern** verb + *on top of* + noun

*They put the blanket **on top of** the sheets, and the bedspread **on top of** the blanket.*

*I'm sure I left my keys **on top of** the desk.*

## Expression

**to be on top of something** to be sure about one's knowledge or control of something

*Her son had a hard time learning math, but he **is on top of** it now.*

## PRACTICE

**44-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.**

1. For a special treat, she put whipped cream on top of her \_\_\_\_\_, and a cherry on top of that.

ice cream

soup

sandwich

milk

2. It was so cold that I put an extra blanket on top of my \_\_\_\_\_.

hat

bed

coat

floor

## UNIT 45:

# Opposite

### Basic Meaning

#### 1. Opposite means facing; across from.

**Pattern** verb + *opposite* + noun

*I sat **opposite** him at the library last night.*

*My house is **opposite** the drugstore.*

### PRACTICE

#### 45-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. I \_\_\_\_ opposite a well-known author at the dinner party.

worked

talked

served

sat



## UNIT 46:

# Out

### Basic Meanings

1. **Out** can indicate **removal** and is separable from the verb used.

**Pattern 1** verb + noun + *out*

*Please take the trash out.*

**Pattern 2** verb + *out* + noun

*Please take out the trash.*

Typical verbs used with *out*:

carry, cross, cut, get, kick, leave, move, take, tear, throw

2. **Out of** indicates **movement from inside**.

**Pattern 1** verb + *out of* + noun

*He was freezing when he got out of the water.*

Typical verbs:

come, crawl, drink, drive, fall, get, go, hop, jump, run, step

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *out of* + noun

*She took the cake out of the oven.*

Typical verbs:

drive, get, grab, move, pour, pull, push, rip, sip, squeeze, take, tear

3. **Out** can indicate **distribution** and is separable from the verb used.

**Pattern 1** verb + noun + *out*

*The teacher told me to hand these papers out.*

**Pattern 2** verb + *out* + noun

*The teacher told me to hand **out** these papers.*

Typical verbs used with *out*:

**give, hand, mail, pass, send**

#### 4. Out of indicates **absence**.

**Pattern** *be + out of + noun*

*The boss **is out of** the office.*

*My neighbors **are out of** the country this month.*

#### Related Expression

**to be out of town** to be absent from one's place of residence

*The boss **is out of town** this week.*

#### 5. Out of indicates a **distance from**.

**Pattern** *verb + out of + noun of place*

*The restaurant is about three miles **out of** town.*

*They live two blocks **out of** the city limits.*

#### 6. Out of can mean **no longer in supply**.

**Pattern** *be/run + out of + plural or noncount noun*

*I can't make a cake because I **am out of** eggs.*

*They had to walk to the gas station because they **ran out of** gas.*

Typical noncount nouns used after *out of*:

**breath, gas, luck, money, stock, time, work**

#### 7. Out of can mean **not as usually expected**.

**Pattern** *be + out of + noun*

*All her clothes **are out of** style.*

*Unfortunately, her children **are out of** control.*

Typical nouns used after *out of*:

commission, context, control, date, fashion, focus, place, practice, reach, season, shape, style, sync, the ordinary, the way, tune

## 8. Out of indicates the basic **ingredients** or **composition** of something.

**Pattern 1** verb + noun + *out of* + noun

*She makes the skirts **out of** scarves.*

*He crafted the tables **out of** twigs.*

**Pattern 2** past participle of verb + *out of* + noun

*The statue was carved **out of** stone.*

*That bread is made **out of** whole wheat flour.*

Typical verbs used before *out of*:

**build, carve, craft, create, fabricate, fashion, make, sculpt, sew, shape**

## 9. Out of can indicate a **fraction**.

**Pattern 1** number + *out of* + number + noun

*Nine **out of** ten people on that street have new cars.*

**Pattern 2** number + noun + *out of* + noun

*Only three women **out of** the whole group volunteered to help.*

## 10. Out of can indicate **beyond**.

**Pattern** verb + *out of* + noun

*We waved until he was **out of** sight.*

*He is **out of** touch with reality.*

Typical nouns used after *out of*:

**bounds, danger, hearing, line, order, sight, touch**

## 11. Out of can indicate a **reason** for action.

**Pattern** verb + *out of* + abstract noun

*She invited him to the party **out of** kindness.*

*He only went **out of** curiosity.*

Typical nouns used after *out of*:

**animosity, anxiety, compassion, cruelty, curiosity, fear, kindness, love, loyalty, malice, meanness, passion, pity, respect, spite, sympathy**

## **Expressions**

**out of doors** outside

*The children love to play **out of doors**.*

**out of it** not conscious of reality

*He hasn't adjusted to his new lifestyle; he is really **out of it** these days.*

**out of the past** exactly as in the past

*The music and dancing were **out of the past**.*

*She is so old-fashioned: her ideas are **out of the** (nineteen) **sixties**.*

**be put out** be resentful

*She **was** really **put out** that you didn't invite her to your party.*

## **Phrasal Verbs**

**ask out** (separable) invite on a date

*He **asks** her **out** all the time, but she never goes with him.*

**blow out** (separable) to extinguish with air

*She **blew out** all the candles on her birthday cake.*

**break out** (intransitive) start suddenly

*A fire **broke out** in the field yesterday.*

**check out** (separable)

1. investigate

*Our air-conditioning isn't working; the repairman is coming to **check it out**.*

2. borrow officially

*He went to the library to **check out** that book.*

**check out (of)** (intransitive) pay the bill at a hotel

*Your friends **checked out** early this morning.*

*They **checked out of** the hotel at six o'clock.*

**chew out** (separable) scold

*The boss really **chewed her out** for being late for the meeting.*

**chicken out (on)** (nonseparable) not act because of fear

*He wanted to call the boss at home, but he **chickened out**.*

*He promised to do it, but he **chickened out on me**.*

**close out of** (nonseparable) sell all of an item, and no longer carry it

*That store is **closing out of** small appliances, and is having a huge sale.*

**come out** (nonseparable) make public that one is LGBTQ

*She **came out** as lesbian last summer, after her first year at college.*

**count out** (separable) not expect someone's participation

*If you're planning a meeting for Saturday, **count me out**.*

**creep out** (separable) to cause nervousness or fear

*That horror movie really **creeped me out**.*

**drop out (of)** (intransitive) leave a group or society

*She didn't enjoy the club, and finally **dropped out**.*

*She **dropped out of** the club.*

**eat out** (intransitive) eat at a restaurant, rather than at home

*That family **eats out** at least once a week.*

**figure out** (separable) solve; understand

*She can't seem to **figure out** her problems.*

**fill out** (separable) complete in writing

*Please **fill out** these forms.*

**find out** (separable) learn by investigating

*Can you help me **find out** where they live?*

**freak out** (separable) to cause heightened emotion

*The young girls **freaked out** when their favorite singer appeared on stage.*

**get out of** (nonseparable) find an excuse to break a commitment

*She said she was sick, and **got out of** washing the dishes.*

**go out with** (nonseparable) date someone

*She **goes out with** my brother every Saturday night.*

**hang out (with)** (intransitive) do nothing, with friends

*Those kids just **hang out** every day after school.*

*They **hang out with** other students.*

**keep out (of)** (intransitive) not enter

*They told us to **keep out**.*

*They told us to **keep out of** their yard.*

**knock out** (separable) cause to lose consciousness

*The champion **knocked** the other boxer **out** in the first round.*

**look out (for)** (intransitive) be careful

*We told them to **look out**.*

*We told them to **look out for** cars when crossing the street.*

**luck out** (intransitive) be lucky

*Tickets were hard to get, but we **lucked out** and got two in the front row.*

**make out** (intransitive) be successful

*We sold all of our stuff at the garage sale and **made out** pretty well.*

**pass out** (intransitive) faint

*She hadn't eaten all day, and she **passed out**.*

**pass out** (separable) distribute

*They asked us to help **pass out** flyers announcing the new restaurant.*

**pick out** (separable) select

*Here are the strawberries; **pick out** the best ones to serve.*

**pig out** (intransitive) to eat excessively

*The party food was so good that a lot of people really **pigged out**.*

**point out** (separable) call attention to

*The agent **pointed out** that the house was in a convenient neighborhood.*

**put out** (separable) extinguish; display

*He **put out** the fire quickly.*

*She **put out** all her best china.*

**stand out (from)** (intransitive) be noticeable

*The tall girl in the chorus **stands out**.*

*She **stands out** from all the short girls.*

**step out (of)** (intransitive) leave a room or building

*It was so hot in there that we decided to **step out** for a few minutes.*

**stress out** (separable) to cause tension

*She loves her job, but it **stresses** her **out** sometimes.*

**talk out of** (separable) convince someone not to do something

*He was going to marry that girl, but his mother **talked** him **out of** it.*

**try out** (separable) use before buying, to find out if suitable

*They let you **try out** the car **out** before you buy it.*

**try out (for)** (nonseparable) audition

*She is going to **try out for** the musical show at school.*

**turn out** (intransitive) indicates a result

*How did the dress you were making **turn out**?*

**wash out (of)** (separable) remove from clothing with soap and water

*I tried to **wash** that spot **out** of my dress.*

**watch out (for)** (intransitive) be careful

*He told her to **watch out**.*

*He told her to **watch out for** danger.*

**wear out** (separable) use until ruined

*I **wore** my shoes **out**, and had to throw them away.*

**work out** (separable) solve a problem in a relationship

*That couple had a lot of problems, but they **worked** them **out**.*

**work out** (intransitive) do exercise

*He **works out** every evening.*

## PRACTICE

**46-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.**

1. My sweater was full of holes, so I \_\_\_\_\_ it out.

gave

threw

took

got

2. In addition to the holes in my sweater, it was also out of \_\_\_\_\_.

the country

the blue

style

wool

3. When they saw the fire, they \_\_\_\_\_ out of the house.

drove

pushed

ran

stood

4. She's on vacation. She will be out of the \_\_\_\_\_ for a week.

office

door

work

beach

5. He's been running, and now he's out of \_\_\_\_\_

money

time

the office

breath

6. The female candidate won the election. \_\_\_\_\_ out of every four people voted for her.

One

Two

Three

Six

7. He doesn't have much money, but he gives to the homeless out of \_\_\_\_\_.

home

kindness

his heart

his mind

**46-2. Use an expression with *out* or *out of* to express the following:**

1. He invited me for a date.
2. They have already left the hotel and paid their bill.
3. He stopped going to school when he was sixteen.
4. She fainted in class yesterday.
5. Please choose four apples that look good.
6. The firemen extinguished the fire.
7. I spilled coffee on the sofa and tried to remove the spot.
8. They exercise together at the gym.



## UNIT 47:

# Outside

### Basic Meaning

#### 1. Outside (of) means not within.

**Pattern** verb + *outside (of)* + noun

*Don't worry, the dog is **outside (of)** the house.*

### PRACTICE

#### 47-1. Choose the best word or words for the blank space.

1. After the accident, the police officer told me to stay outside of the \_\_\_\_\_.

car

house

hospital

ambulance

## UNIT 48:

# Over

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Over means **above**.

**Pattern 1** verb + *over* + noun

*The plane flew **over** our building.*

*The pictures were hanging **over** the sofa.*

Typical verbs used before *over*:

**be, bend, float, fly, hang, hover, lean, look, shine, watch**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *over* + noun

*She hung the pictures **over** the sofa.*

Typical verbs used with this pattern:

**float, fly, hang, hold, install, nail, place, suspend**

### Expression

**to hold something over one's head** to control, threaten, or punish someone because of a known fact or misdeed

*She knows he was fired from his last job; now she **holds that over his head**.*

#### 2. Over can mean **higher than**.

**Pattern** *be* + (*way*) *over* + noun

*The price of that vacation **is (way) over** our budget.*

*The water at this end of the pool **is over** your head.*

#### 3. Over (adverb) can mean **more than**.

**Pattern** *over* + **number** + **noun**

*He was driving at **over** eighty miles an hour.*

*I have gained **over** five pounds this month.*

**4. Over** indicates movement **above** something and **to the other side** of it.

**Pattern 1** **verb** + *over* + **noun**

*The children jumped **over** the puddles on their way to school.*

*We had to climb **over** the mountain to get here.*

Typical verbs used before *over*:

**climb, cross, drive, get, go, hop, jump, look, run, skate, skip, step, stumble, trip**

**Pattern 2** **verb** + **noun** + *over* + **noun**

*The young player batted the ball **over** the fence.*

*We had fun throwing rocks **over** the creek.*

Typical verbs:

**bat, carry, drive, hit, throw**

**5. Over** can mean **covering** something.

**Pattern** **verb** + **noun** + *over* + **noun**

*The child wore a warm jacket **over** her dress.*

*The lady sewed patches **over** the holes.*

Typical verbs:

**drape, hang, have, paint, place, pour, pull, put, sew, spread, tape, wear**

**6. Over** indicates **control**.

**Pattern 1** *rule/preside* + *over* + **noun**

*She **rules over** her family like a tyrant.*

*The chairman asked me to **preside over** the meeting tonight.*

**Pattern 2** *have control/power* + *over* + **noun**

*They **have no control over** their actions.*

*He likes to **have power over** his associates.*

**7. Over** can mean location **on the other side of** something.

*That restaurant is **over** the state line.*

*They live **over** the river.*

Typical verbs:

**be, be located, dwell, lie, live, reside**

**8. (All) over** can mean **in many parts of** a place.

**Pattern** verb + *all* + *over* + *the* + noun

*They have traveled **all over the** world.*

*She looked **all over the** city for her friend.*

Typical nouns:

**city, country, field, floor, house, place, playground, sidewalk, state, street, table, town, world, yard**

Typical verbs:

**broadcast, crawl, drive, look, roll, run, send, spill, throw, travel, walk**

**9. Over** can mean **during**.

**Pattern 1** *over* + noun

*We had an interesting discussion **over** breakfast this morning.*

Typical nouns after *over*:

**breakfast, coffee, dinner, drinks, lunch, snacks, tea**

**Pattern 2** *over* + *the* + noun

*They decided to read the papers **over the** holidays.*

*She has been sick **over the** last three weeks.*

Nouns commonly used with this pattern:

**holidays, summer, weekend, winter**

**next (number) hours, days, weeks, months, years**

**last (number) hours, days, weeks, months, years**

**10. Over** can indicate a **topic**.

**Pattern** verb + *over* + noun

*They argued **over** politics all night.*

*I wish you wouldn't fight **over** money.*

Typical verbs used before *over*:

**argue, battle, cry, fight, grieve, gush, puzzle, sigh, worry**

## 11. Over (adverb) can mean **again**.

**Pattern** verb + noun + *over*

*She didn't like my work; she told me to do it **over**.*

Typical verbs used before *over*:

**do, read, start, write**

## Expressions

**be over one's head** more than one can understand

*I can do simple math, but that problem **is way over my head**.*

**over the telephone** by means of telephone

*She gave me that information **over the telephone**.*

**head over heels** completely

*He is **head over heels** in love with her.*

## As an adverb

**(all) over** finished

*The party was **all over** at nine o'clock.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**blow over** (intransitive) be forgotten

*Don't worry about your argument with him; I'm sure it will **blow over**.*

**fall over** (intransitive) collapse

*She was sitting at her desk when she suddenly **fell over**.*

**go over** (nonseparable) review

*He **went over** my algebra with me.*

**hand over** (separable) give reluctantly

*The children had to **hand over** all the money they found.*

**have over** (separable) invite to one's home

*We want to **have** you **over** soon.*

**look over** (separable) review

*Please **look over** these papers before the meeting tomorrow.*

**pass over** (separable) not give an expected promotion

*She expected to be promoted to director, but she was **passed over** this year.*

**pick over** (separable) find and choose the best of a lot

*Some of these cherries are not ripe; you will have to **pick** them **over** carefully.*

**pull over** (intransitive) drive to the side of the road

*We were driving too fast, and the police officer made us **pull over**.*

**pull over** (separable) move to cover something

***Pull** the sweater **over** your head.*

**run over** crush with vehicle

*She **ran over** the package with her car.*

**start over** begin again

*I made a lot of mistakes, so I **started** my homework **over**.*

**take over** (intransitive) become the boss, or act like a boss

*The children don't like to play with that boy because he always tries to **take over**.*

**take over** (separable) carry something to another place

*Please **take** this letter **over** to your neighbor.*

**think over** (separable) consider the pros and cons

*Your offer interests us; we will **think** it **over**.*

**turn over** (intransitive) change position from face down, face up, or vice versa

*Most babies **turn over** in the first six months of life.*

**turn over** (separable) move something from top to bottom, or vice versa

*Some kids **turned** all the trash cans **over** last night.*

## PRACTICE

**48-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.**

1. The airplane was flying over our \_\_\_\_\_.

- |          |           |          |       |
|----------|-----------|----------|-------|
| clothing | furniture | building | party |
|----------|-----------|----------|-------|
2. Don't go in that end of the swimming pool. The water is over your \_\_\_\_\_.  

weight	age	height	head
--------	-----	--------	------
  3. He hit a home run. The ball went over the \_\_\_\_\_.  

street	base	fence	home plate
--------	------	-------	------------
  4. She has no control over her \_\_\_\_\_.  

dogs	roof	garage	door
------	------	--------	------
  5. To get there, you have to go over the \_\_\_\_\_.  

street	state line	house	horse
--------	------------	-------	-------
  6. He drives way too fast. He always goes over \_\_\_\_\_.  

55 mph	60 mph	the speed limit	the traffic lights
--------	--------	-----------------	--------------------
  7. We looked all over the \_\_\_\_\_ for your keys.  

ceiling	clothing	pockets	hotel room
---------	----------	---------	------------
  8. They don't get along. They are always fighting over \_\_\_\_\_.  

traffic	money	the hotel room	the state line
---------	-------	----------------	----------------

**48-2. Use an expression with *over* to express the following:**

1. She is really in love with him.
2. That course is too hard for me.

**48-3. Use a phrasal verb with *over* to express the following:**

1. Nobody was there when he collapsed.
2. The police officer stopped me when I was driving too fast.
3. He didn't get the promotion.
4. We are considering your offer.
5. Could you please read these contracts before the meeting?

## UNIT 49:

# Past

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Past means **beyond**.

**Pattern** *be* + ***past*** + noun referring to a place

*The gas station **is** on your left, just **past** the shopping center.*

#### 2. Past indicates **movement in front of and beyond** a place.

**Pattern** verb + ***past*** + noun

*We drove **past** your house on our way to the party.*

*They often walk **past** the park.*

#### 3. Past means **older than**.

**Pattern** *be* + ***past*** + noun referring to age

*His daughter **is past** her teens now.*

*I'm sure he **is past** fifty.*

#### 4. Past means **no longer able** to do something.

**Pattern** *be* + ***past*** + verb in gerund form

*She **is** bitter now, and **past** caring.*

*The men **were** exhausted and **past** working.*

#### 5. Past (adverb) means **later than**.

**Pattern** *be* + ***past*** + noun referring to time

*It is ten **past** three in the afternoon.*



*They left at half **past** seven.*

## **PRACTICE**

**49-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.**

1. I can take you to work. I go past \_\_\_\_\_ on the way to mine.

your apartment

your office

your house

your sister

2. He plans to retire when he is past \_\_\_\_\_.

sixty-five

the goalpost

the corner

the state line

## UNIT 50:

# Through

### Basic Meanings

1. **Through** indicates **passage within** something.

**Pattern** verb + *through* + noun

*The children drank their milkshakes **through** straws.*

*The highway was closed, and we had to come **through** the city.*

Typical nouns used after *through*:

**funnel, passage, pipe, straw, tunnel**

**a place building, city, country, park, state, town**

2. **Through** can indicate a **gateway** or **obstacle** between two places.

**Pattern 1** verb + *through* + noun

*We came **through** the front door.*

*He drove **through** the red light and got a ticket.*

Typical nouns:

**barricade, barrier, curtains, customs, door, entrance, gate, hole, intersection, light, slot, stop sign, window**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *through* + noun

*The mail carrier pushed the letters **through** the slot.*

Typical verbs used before *through*:

**bring, carry, force, pull, push, receive, send, take**

3. **Through** can indicate **vision beyond** something.

**Pattern** *see/show* + *through* + noun

*The window is so dirty that I can't **see through** it.*

*The tablecloth needs a liner; the table legs **show through** it.*

Typical nouns used after *through*:

**clouds, fabric, fog, glass, smoke, window**

## Related Expression

**to see through somebody** to detect insincerity

*That woman pretends to be nice, but I can **see through** her.*

## 4. Through can indicate the **parts beginning, between, and including**.

**Pattern** *from* + noun + *through* + noun

*They have to work **from** Monday **through** Friday.*

*Please read **from** chapter one **through** chapter four.*

## 5. Through can mean **finish something that requires effort**.

**Pattern 1** verb + *through* + noun

*I have to get **through** school before I can get married.*

Typical verbs used before *through*:

**get, go, live, struggle, suffer**

Typical nouns after *through*:

**school, training, work**

**Pattern 2** *be* + *through* + *with* + noun

*Are you **through with** your exams yet?*

Typical nouns used with this pattern:

**course, exams, red tape, trouble**

## Related Expression

**to go through** to experience something difficult

*He is **going through** a divorce.*

## 6. Through can indicate **in all parts of a place; throughout**

**Pattern 1** verb + (*all*) *through* + *the* + noun

*We walked **all through** the garden.*

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *(all) through* + *the* + noun

*They distributed flyers **all through the** neighborhood.*

Typical nouns used after *through*:

**building, city, country, garden, house, neighborhood, state, town**

## Related Expression

**to go/look through** something to look at all the contents of something, hoping to find something

*I **went through** my files and found these documents.*

*I **looked through** my papers, but I couldn't find the certificate.*

Typical nouns used after *through*:

**boxes, closets, correspondence, drawers, files, letters, notes, papers, records, things**

**7. (All) through** (or **throughout**) can mean **during an entire event or period.**

**Pattern 1** verb + *through* + noun

*Those women talked **through** the whole game.*

*The baby finally slept **all through** the night.*

Typical verbs before *through*:

**cheat, cry, laugh, play, sit, sleep, stay, talk, wait, watch, worry**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *through* + noun

*She cared for her father **through** his illness.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

**abuse, care for, help, ignore, wait for, wait on**

Typical nouns used after *through*:

**afternoon, breakfast, day, dinner, game, illness, life, lunch, meal, month, morning, night, ordeal, performance, play, time, war, wedding, week, year**

## Related Expressions

**to see something through** to stay with something until it is finished.

*Don't worry, we will **see** your project **through**.*

**to see somebody through** to stay with somebody until he is out of trouble.

*I will **see** you **through** this problem; I promise.*

## 8. Through can mean by means of.

**Pattern** verb + noun + **through** + noun

*We heard the news **through** friends.*

*They bought that apartment **through** an agency.*

Typical nouns after *through*:

**agency, contacts, friends, gossip, newspaper, translator**

**instruments of vision binoculars, glasses, lenses, microscope, periscope**

## Related Expressions

**to hear something through the grapevine** to get news unofficially

*We **heard** about your engagement **through the grapevine**.*

## 9. Through can indicate a reason.

**Pattern** verb + noun + **through** + noun

*She achieved success **through** determination and hard work.*

***Through** an error in our accounting, we have overcharged you.*

Typical nouns after *through*:

**carelessness, determination, fault, frustration, generosity, greed, hard work, help, kindness, luck, misinformation, negligence, selfishness, an error, a mistake**

## Expression

**to go through with something** to continue doing something; to not give up

*I can't believe you are still going **to go through with** your plans.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**carry/follow through** (separable) complete a project

*He has some good ideas; I hope he can **carry them through**.*

**carry/follow through with** (nonseparable) complete

*I hope he can **carry through with** his plans.*

**come through** (intransitive) perform as one has promised

*She promised to help us; I hope she **comes through**.*

**fall through** (intransitive) collapse

*All his plans to move to California **fell through**.*

**show through** (separable) to give someone a tour of a building

*When we went to Washington, D.C., our congressman **showed us through** the Capitol.*

## PRACTICE

### 50-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. She got a ticket because she went through a \_\_\_\_\_.  
counter                      red light                      concert                      movie
2. I can't see through the \_\_\_\_\_, because it's so dirty.  
couch                      chair                      garage                      window
3. Before I can graduate, I have to get through this \_\_\_\_\_.  
street                      course                      office                      window
4. She took care of him all through his \_\_\_\_\_.  
illness                      work                      concert                      bed
5. We got the visas through the \_\_\_\_\_.  
airplane                      passports                      embassy                      stewardess

### 50-2. Use a phrasal verb with *through* to express the following:

1. Do you think he will do what he promised?
2. Our contract failed.
3. She gave us a tour of the museum.

## UNIT 51:

# Throughout

### Basic Meanings

**1. Throughout** means **in all parts** of a place.

*There are spiders **throughout** the building.*

**2. Throughout** means during **an entire period of time**.

*She stays at the beach **throughout** the summer.*

### PRACTICE

**51-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.**

1. I've had that song in my head throughout the \_\_\_\_\_.

building

day

years

city

2. When our team won the championship, there were victory celebrations throughout the \_\_\_\_\_.

city

bus station

airport

game

## UNIT 52:

# To

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. To indicates the **destination of a verb**.

**Pattern 1** verb + *to* + **o** noun

*I'm going **to** bed.*

*They ride **to** school on the bus.*

Nouns commonly used after *to*:

**bed, breakfast, church, dinner, jail, lunch, school, work**

#### Exception

**go o** home

*It is time to **go** home.*

*They **went** home on the bus.*

**Pattern 2** verb + *to* + *the* + noun

*We go **to the** park every afternoon.*

*Call when you get **to the** office.*

Verbs often used with *to*:

**come, drive, extend, fall, fly, get, go, hike, move, return, ride, rise, run, send, ship, sink, walk**

#### 2. To indicates the **destination of a noun**.

**Pattern 1** noun + *to* + noun

*The train **to** New York leaves at six o'clock.*

*We wanted to go on a cruise **to** the Caribbean.*

Typical nouns used before *to*:



**airplane, bridge, bus, climb, cruise, flight, highway, path, race, road, subway, train, trip, way**

**Pattern 2** noun + *be* + *to* + noun

*The train is to New York.*

*His question is to me.*

Typical nouns used before *to*:

**answer, card, donation, explanation, gift, letter, memo, offer, petition, present, proposal, question, request, suggestion**

### **3. To indicates a transfer from a person or place.**

**Pattern** verb + noun + *to* + noun

*He delivers the mail to the office.*

*She mentioned her plans to me.*

Typical verbs used before *to*:

**bring, carry, deliver, describe, distribute, donate, explain, give, hand, introduce, lend, mention, pass, present, read, recommend, reveal, send, shout, show, sing, speak, submit, suggest, take, tell, write**

### **4. To indicates a beneficiary.**

**Pattern 1** verb + noun + *to* + noun

*They made a toast to the bride and groom.*

Typical verbs used with this pattern:

**award, dedicate, devote, give, make**

Typical nouns used before *to*:

**award, dedication, gift, memorial, monument, plaque, present, remark, scholarship, statement, toast**

### **Related Expression**

**as a favor to** for the benefit of

*We came to help you as a favor to your father.*

**Pattern 2** *to* + *one's* + noun

*If you shout, someone will come to your aid.*

*It is **to** your benefit to join the credit union.*

*The police came **to** my rescue when my car broke down.*

## 5. To indicates an effect on the recipient.

### Pattern 1 *be* + noun + *to* + noun

*He **is** a credit **to** his mother and father.*

*The airplane noise **is** a disturbance **to** the neighborhood.*

Nouns commonly used before *to*:

**annoyance, bother, challenge, credit, detriment, discredit, disturbance, help, nuisance**

### Pattern 2 *be* + adjective + *to* + noun

*His calls **are** very annoying **to** me.*

Typical adjectives used before *to*:

**abhorrent, acceptable, annoying, beneficial, boring, confusing, crucial, detrimental, distasteful, disturbing, fascinating, gratifying, harmful, helpful, hurtful, important, meaningful, obnoxious, pleasing, precious, preferable, repulsive, satisfying, unacceptable, unfavorable, unimportant, vexing, worrisome**

## Related Expression

**to be to one's taste** to be personally pleasing to someone

*The apartment is large and expensive, but **it's not to my taste**.*

### Pattern 3 *to* + *one's* + noun

***To my** surprise, everybody was at work on Saturday.*

***To their** delight, the campaign was a great success.*

Typical nouns:

**astonishment, chagrin, delight, disappointment, discomfort, disgrace, disgust, embarrassment, horror, satisfaction, surprise**

## 6. To can indicate a reaction.

### Pattern 1 verb + *to* + noun

*She responded **to** my letter right away.*

*I hope you don't object **to** my offer of help.*

Typical verbs used before *to*:

**adapt, admit, agree, appeal, consent, listen, object, pay attention, prefer, react, relate, reply, respond, revert, subscribe**

**Pattern 2** noun + *to* + noun

*She has an allergy **to** that medicine.*

*Do you have an answer **to** that question?*

Typical nouns:

**allergy, answer, appeal, aversion, consent, objection, preference, reaction, relation, reply, response**

**Pattern 3** *be* + adjective + *to* + noun

*She **is** allergic **to** that medicine.*

*We **are** indebted **to** you for helping us.*

Typical adjectives:

**accustomed, allergic, grateful, indebted, thankful**

## **7. To can indicate someone's behavior toward another person.**

**Pattern** *be* + adjective + *to* + noun

*He **was** very cruel **to** me.*

*She **has been** hostile **to** her neighbors.*

Typical adjectives:

**affectionate, appreciative, attentive, available, charming, cold, considerate, cordial, cruel, devoted, dreadful, faithful, friendly, gracious, hospitable, hostile, inconsiderate, kind, loyal, mean, nice, obedient, open, pleasant, polite, respectful, sassy, warm**

## **8. To can indicate attachment.**

**Pattern 1** verb + noun + *to* + noun

*We will paste the wallpaper **to** the bedroom walls.*

*She pinned the flowers **to** my lapel.*

**Pattern 2** *be* + past participle of verb + *to* + noun

*Your paper **is** stapled **to** mine.*

*The gum **is** stuck **to** my shoe.*

Typical verbs used with these patterns:

**add, adhere, affix, apply, attach, glue, hold, nail, paste, pin, press, screw, sew, staple, stick, tape**

## **9. To indicates the end of a period of time; until.**

**Pattern** *from + to + noun*

*They work **from** morning **to** night.*

*He was here **from** two **to** five.*

## **10. To means before, in telling time.**

**Pattern** *It + be + number of minutes + to + hour*

*It is ten (minutes) **to** three in the afternoon.*

*It was a quarter (fifteen minutes) **to** four.*

## **11. To can indicate continuous repetition of an action.**

**Pattern 1** *verb + from + noun + to + same noun*

*We went **from** door **to** door with our information sheets.*

*The bus rocked **from** side **to** side.*

Common expressions:

**door to door, house to house, place to place, side to side**

**Pattern 2** *noun + hyphen + to + hyphen + same noun + noun*

*They have door-**to**-door service.*

## **12. To can indicate a comparison of value.**

**Pattern 1** *be + adjective + to + noun*

*His work **is** comparable **to** hers.*

*Your car **is** similar **to** mine.*

Typical adjectives:

**comparable, inferior, preferable, similar, superior**

**Pattern 2** *compare + noun + to + noun*

*Please don't **compare** my work **to** yours.*

**Pattern 3** *compared + to + noun*

*She is of medium height, but **compared to** her sister, she is tall.*

**13. To can indicate a problem or solution.**

**Pattern** *noun + to + noun*

*The strike is a threat **to** our survival.*

*She knows the secret **to** success.*

Typical nouns used before *to*:

Problems: **barrier, obstacle, threat**

Solutions: **answer, antidote, boost, clue, directions, guide, instructions, key, secret, solution**

**14. To can indicate ownership, membership, and connection.**

**Pattern 1** *belong/pertain + to + noun*

*The book **belongs to** me.*

*Her friends **belong to** that club.*

*This discussion does not **pertain to** you.*

**Pattern 2** *adjective + to + noun*

*Your comments are not **pertinent to** this topic.*

Adjectives used with this meaning:

**attached, attributable, committed, connected, dedicated, engaged, exclusive, important, married, obligated, pertinent, promised, related, relevant, seconded, tied**

**15. To can indicate an exclusive relationship.**

**Pattern** *the + noun + to + noun*

*This is **the** key **to** my front door.*

*Have you seen **the** jacket **to** my new suit?*

*She is **the** new secretary **to** the chairman.*

Typical nouns:

**assistant, case, cover, door, jacket, key, knob, lid, part, secretary, strap, ticket, top**

## 16. To indicates the **accompaniment of sound**.

**Pattern** verb + *to* + noun

*We danced **to** the rhythm of the music.*

*I wake up **to** the noise of the city.*

Typical nouns:

**beat, blare, buzz, honk, hum, music, noise, rhythm, roar, sound, strum, tune**

## 17. To means **leading to an extreme condition**.

**Pattern** verb + noun + *to* + noun

*He tore the paper **to** pieces.*

*She drives him **to** distraction.*

## Related Expressions

**beat/grind to a pulp**

**bore to death**

**carry to extremes**

**chill to the bone**

**cook to perfection**

**drive to distraction/insanity**

**grind to dust**

**move to tears**

**push/carry/take to the limits**

**sing/rock to sleep**

**smash to bits**

**soak to the skin**

**starve/freeze to death**

**tear to pieces/shreds**

## 18. To indicates an **upper limitation** of an approximation.

**Pattern** number + *to* + number

*It is two **to** two-and-a-half feet long.*  
*He is thirty-eight **to** forty years old.*

## 19. To indicates a **relationship** between the subject and the object.

**Pattern 1** noun + *be* + **adverb** + *to* + noun, to show location

*The library **is** close **to** the park.*  
*The new theater **is** adjacent **to** the mall.*

Typical adverbs:

**at an angle, close, next**

**Pattern 2** noun + *be* + **adjective** + *to* + noun

*That line **is** parallel **to** this one.*

Typical adjectives:

**adjacent, parallel, perpendicular**

**Pattern 3** noun + *to* + noun, to indicate position

*They sat back **to** back.*  
*She came face **to** face with danger.*

**Pattern 4** number + *to* + number, to give the score of a game

*The score was three **to** two.*

**Pattern 5** amount + *to* + amount, to show equality

*There are four quarts **to** a gallon.*

**Pattern 6** amount + *to* + amount, to show ratio

*He gets thirty miles **to** a gallon on the highway in his new car.*

## 20. To can indicate **restriction**.

**Pattern 1** verb + noun + *to* + noun

*We limited him **to** three meals a day, with no sugary snacks.*  
*They confined her **to** jail for thirty-six hours.*

Typical verbs:

**bind, confine, hold, limit, restrict, sentence, tie**

**Pattern 2** past participle of verb (adjective) + *to* + noun

*He is limited **to** three meals a day.*  
*She is confined **to** jail for thirty-six hours.*

## Expressions

**to rise to the occasion** to force oneself to act correctly

*I was annoyed when he walked in, but I **rose to the occasion** and shook his hand.*

**to subscribe to** to pay for and receive a periodical regularly

*How many magazines do you **subscribe to**?*

*She **subscribes to** three daily newspapers.*

**from time to time** occasionally

*He calls me **from time to time**.*

**to be used to/to be accustomed to + noun** to have adapted

*He is dizzy because he **is not used to** the altitude.*

*She is nervous because **she is not used to** driving in traffic.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**come to** (intransitive) regain consciousness

*She fainted a few minutes ago, but fortunately **came to** right away.*

**see to** (nonseparable) take responsibility for a future action

*You don't have to make reservations; we will **see to** that.*

**look forward to** (nonseparable) await with pleasure

*We are **looking forward to** seeing you soon.*

## PRACTICE

**52-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.**

1. After school, the kids went \_\_\_\_\_.

to home

to the home

playground

home

2. How do the children get to \_\_\_\_\_?

home

school

playground

house

3. The \_\_\_\_\_ to Los Angeles leaves at 4 P.M.

road

highway

flight

bridge

4. She \_\_\_\_\_ her homework to the teacher.

handed

threw

found

told



5. The music award went to the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 best builder                  best pilot                  best pianist                  best brother
6. Bad drivers are a danger to the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 sky                  neighborhood                  driveway                  supermarket
7. Don't worry. Soon you will \_\_\_\_\_ to your new environment.  
 adapt                  consent                  prefer                  respond
8. Do you have an allergy to \_\_\_\_\_?  
 the weather                  dust                  homework                  rain
9. The dog was \_\_\_\_\_ to its owner.  
 happy                  hospitable                  obedient                  sick
10. It's 10:45. It's \_\_\_\_\_ to eleven.  
 10 minutes                  45 minutes                  a quarter                  half
11. My friends and I belong to the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 bookshelf                  book club                  readers                  hospital
12. How many miles to a \_\_\_\_\_ do you get on the highway?  
 city                  speedometer                  gallon                  quart

**52-2. Use an expression with *to* to express the following:**

1. He texts me occasionally.
2. Have you adapted to the climate here?

**52-3. Use *to* in a phrasal verb to express the following:**

1. She regained consciousness a few minutes ago.
2. I am awaiting your visit with pleasure.

## UNIT 53:

# Toward

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Toward means in the direction of a place.

**Pattern 1** verb + *toward* + noun

*She ran **toward** the playground to see her friends.*

*Let's head **toward** the park.*

Typical verbs:

**blow, fly, go, head, hike, look, march, move, point, run, sail, turn, walk**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *toward* + noun

*He guided us **toward** the cave.*

*They directed the girls **toward** the path.*

Typical verbs:

**direct, guide, lead, pull, push, shove, throw**

#### 2. Toward indicates attitude about something.

**Pattern 1** *be* + adjective + *toward* + noun

*She **is** very affectionate **toward** her parents.*

*They **have been** cool **toward** his proposals.*

Typical adjectives:

**affectionate, charitable, considerate, cool, friendly, gracious, hospitable, inhospitable, menacing, spiteful, warm**

**Pattern 2** noun + *toward* + noun

*His feelings **toward** her have not changed.*

Typical nouns before *toward*:

**attitude, behavior, conduct, demeanor, feelings**

### 3. Toward indicates the **direction of action**.

**Pattern** verb + *toward* + noun

*They are heading **toward** an agreement.*

*We worked **toward** a happy conclusion for everyone.*

Typical nouns after *toward*:

**agreement, argument, conclusion, ending, goal, vote**

Typical verbs:

**head, lean, push, take steps, work**

### 4. Toward indicates the object of a **contribution** or **partial payment**.

**Pattern** verb + *toward* + noun

*The money will go **toward** helping the family.*

*She contributes **toward** his monthly expenses.*

Typical verbs:

**contribute, donate, give, go, help**

## PRACTICE

### 53-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. We are taking \_\_\_\_\_ toward achieving our goals.  
pushes                      steps                      walks                      money
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ toward his monthly expenses.  
contributes                      donates                      goes                      steps
3. He is very \_\_\_\_\_ toward his guests.  
happy                      confusing                      feeling                      hospitable
4. They \_\_\_\_\_ us toward the camp.  
followed                      found                      directed                      threw

## UNIT 54:

# Towards

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Towards means near a period of time.

##### Pattern 1 *towards* + noun

*I always feel hungry towards dinnertime.*

Typical nouns used after *towards*:

**dawn, dinnertime, dusk, evening, lunchtime, mid-afternoon, midnight, noon**

##### Pattern 2 *towards* + *the* + *end/middle* + *of* + *the* + noun

*We start getting ready for school towards the end of the summer.*

Typical nouns used with this pattern:

**class, concert, course, day, fall, flight, game, month, party, period, season, semester, show, spring, summer, trip, vacation, week, winter, year**

### PRACTICE

#### 54-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. Everyone will be leaving towards \_\_\_\_\_.

the game

midnight

month

year

2. We'll start practicing for the concert towards the beginning of \_\_\_\_\_.

April

the game

midnight

month

## UNIT 55:

# Under

### Basic Meanings

**1. Under** means **in a lower position** than something else.

**Pattern 1** verb + *under* + noun

*We sat **under** the tree and had a picnic.*

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *under* + noun

*Let's put the desk **under** the window; then we'll have a great view.*

**2. Under** means **covered by something else; underneath.**

**Pattern 1** verb + *under* + noun

*The children hid **under** the table, thinking we couldn't see them.*

Typical verbs before *under*:

**be, hide, lie, rest, sit, sleep, stand, wait, walk**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *under* + noun

*She stores all her boxes **under** the bed.*

Typical verbs:

**bury, find, hide, place, push, put, store, wear**

**3. Under** means **less than.**

**Pattern** *under* + noun

*I'm sure she was driving **under** the speed limit.*

*He has three children **under** age ten.*

Nouns commonly used after *under*:

**age, any number, average, height, limit, maximum, minimum, norm, weight**

## Expression

to be **under age** to not be old enough to do something

*She can't vote because she **is under age**.*

### 4. Under can indicate **control**.

#### **Pattern 1** *under* + noun

***Under** this boss we have little freedom to express our own ideas.*

*You have a lot more benefits **under** the new insurance policy.*

Typical nouns used after *under*:

**boss, coach, contract, dictator, doctor, general, king, mayor, policy, president, principal, professor, supervisor, teacher**

#### **Pattern 2** *under* + *the* + noun + *of* + noun

*She is **under the** care **of** a doctor.*

Typical nouns after *under the*:

**administration, care, control, dictatorship, direction, eye, management, presidency**

#### **Pattern 3** *under* + $\emptyset$ + noun

*The children are **under** supervision at all times.*

*They were arrested **under** orders of the chief.*

Typical nouns:

**control, orders, supervision, surveillance**

### 5. Under can indicate a **current situation or state**:

#### **Pattern 1** *be* + *under* + $\emptyset$ noun

*Those two thugs **are under** investigation by the police.*

*That problem **is still under** discussion by the board.*

Typical nouns used after *under*:

**consideration, construction, discussion, investigation, suspicion**

#### **Pattern 2** *be* + *under* + noun

*They are **under** the influence of their new friends.*

Typical nouns used after *under*:

circumstances, conditions, impression, influence

**6. Under** can identify the **category of a noun** in written reference material.

**Pattern** *look up/find* + noun + *under* + name of category

*You can **find** my name **under** “Y” in the directory.*

*I **looked up** butterflies **under** “Insects” in my encyclopedia.*

## PRACTICE

**55-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.**

1. She hides the children's \_\_\_\_\_ under the bed.

socks

sweaters

food

gifts

2. They have three young children. They are all under \_\_\_\_\_.

seven

twenty

twenty-five

fifteen

3. A lot of \_\_\_\_\_ were changed under his presidency.

people

computers

laws

gifts

4. I am under the \_\_\_\_\_ that you are unhappy.

impression

influence

condition

investigation

5. To find information about Toronto, look under \_\_\_\_\_.

The United States

Mexico

The United  
Kingdom

Canada

## UNIT 56:

# Underneath

### Basic Meanings

1. **Underneath** means **in a lower position** than something else.

*The sheets are **underneath** the blankets on the shelf.*

2. **Underneath** means **covered by**.

*I found my jacket **underneath** the other coats.*

3. **Underneath** indicates **concealed feelings**.

***Underneath** her smile there is a lot of heartache.*

*He is really very kind **underneath** his stern appearance.*

### PRACTICE

#### 56-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. The clown has a big smile on his face, but underneath he is \_\_\_\_\_.

sad

happy

laughing

silly

2. She wore \_\_\_\_\_ underneath her clothes because it was so cold.

a slip

a coat

thermal underwear

a blanket



## UNIT 57:

# Until

### Basic Meaning

1. **Until** indicates the **time of change** of an activity or situation.

**Pattern 1** verb + *until* + time

*They waited **until** six o'clock.*

*The boys studied **until** midnight.*

**Pattern 2** verb + *until* + beginning of event

*They lived here **until** their wedding; then they left.*

*She was busy **until** her graduation.*

*They didn't watch the game **until** halftime.*

### PRACTICE

**57-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.**

1. Please be here by noon. I will wait for you until \_\_\_\_.

6 P.M.

1 A.M.

12 P.M.

12 A.M.

2. You will have to study this information until you \_\_\_\_ it.

learn

forget

write

begin

## UNIT 58:

# Up

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Up indicates **movement to a higher place**.

**Pattern 1** verb + *up* + noun

*The cat climbed **up** the tree.*

*She always walks **up** the steps to the fifth floor.*

Typical verbs used before *up*:

**climb, creep, go, jump, move, pop, race, run, walk**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *up* + noun

*Bring the box **up** the steps.*

Typical verbs used with this pattern:

**bring, carry, drag, heave, move, send, take**

#### 2. Up (adverb) indicates **location at a high place**.

**Pattern** *be* + *up*

*The balloon **is up**.*

#### 3. Up indicates **location further along** the way.

**Pattern** verb + *up* + noun

*Their farm is three miles **up** the road.*

*She lives two blocks **up** the street.*

#### 4. Up indicates **movement along** a way.

**Pattern 1** verb + *up* + noun

*She is going to travel **up** Route 66.*

Nouns commonly used after *up*:

**highway, path, road, street, turnpike, way**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + **up** + noun

*We will drive four more miles **up** the highway.*

## 5. Up indicates movement **against a current of water.**

**Pattern** verb + **up** + noun

*They swam **up** the river for exercise.*

Typical verbs used before *up*:

**cruise, drive, go, row, sail, swim**

## 6. Up indicates a **desired result.**

**Pattern** verb + **up** + noun

*They are trying to drum **up** support.*

Typical verbs:

**drum, round, scrape, work**

## Related Expression

**to get up (enough) energy** to try to force oneself to act

*She was exhausted, but she **got up enough energy** to cook dinner for her family.*

## 7. Up indicates **creativity.**

**Pattern** verb + **up** + noun

*We dreamed **up** a wonderful idea.*

Typical verbs used before *up*:

**draw, dream, make, think**

## 8. Up can indicate **division into pieces.**

**Pattern** verb + **up** + noun

*She chopped **up** the onions and peppers.*

*They divided **up** all the money.*

Typical verbs:

**blow, break, chop, cut, divide, tear**

## Expressions

**be up** be awake

*I **am up** every day by eight o'clock.*

**be up to date** have current knowledge or records

*The governor **is up to date** on all the important issues.*

*It's important to keep the files **up to date**.*

**be up to someone** be the responsibility of someone to decide

*I don't care what movie we see; **it's up to** you.*

**be up in arms** (about) protest in anger

*The employees **are up in arms** over the decrease in benefits.*

**be up to one's ears** be extremely busy

*Her brother **is up to his ears** in work.*

**be up a creek** be in a difficult situation

*My partner left with all my money and now **I'm up a creek**.*

**count up to** to count as far as a number

*The baby **can count up to** ten already.*

**make up one's mind** decide

***Make up your mind** between the red dress and the black one.*

**up and down the room** constant movement from one side of the room to the other

*He was so nervous that he walked **up and down the room** all night.*

## Phrasal Verbs

**act up** (intransitive) misbehave (**act out** is now commonly used with this meaning)

*The children always **act up** just before the school holidays begin.*

**add up** (intransitive) make sense

*She claims to have lots of friends, yet she is always alone; it doesn't **add up**.*

**amp up** (separable) increase in force

*The new government **amped up** investigations of private citizens.*

**back up** (intransitive) reverse

*The hardest part about driving a car is **backing up**.*

**blow up** (intransitive) get angry

*The girl's father **blew up** when she got home so late.*

**blow up** (separable) make bigger

*These photographs are too small; we should **blow them up**.*

**bone up on** (nonseparable) do an intensive study or review of

*He wanted to **bone up on** European history before he went on the tour.*

**boot up** (separable) start a computer

*We shut the computer down and then **booted it up** again.*

**break up** (separable) end

*The neighbors didn't like our noisy party and told us to **break it up**.*

**break up (with)** (intransitive) end a relationship

*It's always sad when a family **breaks up**.*

*The girl cried when she **broke up with** her boyfriend.*

**bring up** (separable) raise

*She **brought** the children **up** by herself.*

**bring up** (separable) mention a new topic

*At the meeting, the lady **brought up** the parking problem in our neighborhood.*

**brush up (on)** (nonseparable) practice to relearn old skills

*He wants to **brush up on** his Spanish before he goes to Mexico.*

**burn up** (separable) be destroyed by fire (something small)

*All of her papers and books **burned up** in the fire.*

**burn up** (separable) make angry

*Those silly gossips really **burn me up**.*

**call up** (separable) contact someone by telephone

*He comes home from school and **calls** all his friends **up**.*

**catch up on** (nonseparable) get back to a normal situation

*After staying up late every night, I need to **catch up on** sleep.*

**catch up (with)** (intransitive) reach the place or level of another person or people

*He has been sick and needs some time to **catch up**.*

*It will be hard for him to **catch up with** the other students.*

**cheer up** (intransitive) be happier

*She needs to **cheer up**.*

**cheer up** (separable) make someone happier

*She needs someone to **cheer her up**.*

**clean up** (intransitive) clean thoroughly

*They promised to **clean up** after the party.*

**clean up** (separable) clean thoroughly

*They promised to **clean** the house **up** after the party.*

**close up** (intransitive) close for business

*The shops **close up** in the afternoon, and reopen in the evening.*

**close up** (separable) stop operating a business

*They **closed** the shop **up** last year.*

**come up to** approach

*They **came up to** us and asked for help.*

**cover up** (separable) hide the facts

*They committed a crime and then **covered** it **up**.*

**dress up** put on more formal clothes than usual

*She always **dresses up** for parties.*

**face up to** (nonseparable) confront

*She had to stop dreaming and **face up to** the truth.*

**feel up to** (nonseparable) feel good enough for an activity

*He is a lot better, but he still doesn't **feel up to** going to work.*

**fill up** (separable) put in all that the container will hold

*If you use my car, please **fill** it **up** with gas.*

**get up** (intransitive) rise

*She **gets up** at six o'clock every morning.*

**get up** (separable) lift or remove something with some difficulty

*Will you help me **get** these boxes **up** the steps?*

**give up** (intransitive) surrender

*We won the game because the other team **gave up** and went home.*

**give up** (separable) stop using something

*He tried to stop smoking cigarettes, but found it hard to **give them up**.*

**give up (on)** (intransitive) stop trying

*She tried to convince her daughter to go back to school, but she finally **gave up**.*

*She finally **gave up on** her daughter.*

**grow up** (intransitive) become an adult

*Her son wants to be a doctor when he **grows up**.*

**hang up** (intransitive) put the phone down to end a telephone call

*You have called the wrong number; **hang up** and try again.*

**hang up** (separable) put clothing on a hook or hanger

*After you wash this dress, you should **hang it up**.*

**hang up on** (nonseparable) rudely end a telephone call during a conversation

*When she refused his invitation, he got angry and **hung up on** her.*

**hold up** (intransitive) continue in good condition

*The bike is in good shape now, but I don't know how long it will **hold up**.*

**hold up** (separable) delay

*The traffic on the bridge **held us up** for two hours.*

**hurry up** (intransitive) go faster

*Please **hurry up**! We're late.*

**hype up** (separable) advertise excessively

*They **hyped up** that actress, but she's not really very good.*

**keep up** (intransitive) stay at the level of the others

*The other hikers walked faster, and we couldn't **keep up**.*

**keep up** (separable) continue

*You are doing a great job. **Keep it up**!*

**keep up with** (nonseparable) go as fast as

*Please don't walk so fast; I can't **keep up with** you.*

**line up** (intransitive) form a line for service in order

*We always **line up** to buy tickets.*

**line up** (separable) make an arrangement with someone

*We **lined up** a great band for our dance.*

**listen up** (intransitive) pay attention

*The coach told the boys to **listen up**.*

**look up** (separable) search in a guide or directory

*If you want her phone number, **look it up** in the directory.*

**look up to** (nonseparable) respect

*Everybody in the department **looks up to** the director; she is wonderful.*

**make up** (separable) do missed work at a later time

*She missed the test, but the teacher said she could **make it up** next week.*

**make up to** (separable) do a favor to pay for a damage

*She hurt his feelings, then **made it up to** him by inviting him to her party.*

**make up (with)** (intransitive) become friends again after an argument

*They had a big fight, but they **made up** last night.*

*They **made up with** each other at the party.*

**mark up** (separable) increase the price

*Those shoes were cheaper last year; they have **marked them up**.*

**mix up** (separable) confuse

*The sisters look so much alike; I **mix them up** all the time.*

**mix up (with)** (separable) put with other things

*She put the ingredients in a bowl and **mixed them all up**.*

*They **mixed the eggs up** with the butter and sugar.*

**pass up** (separable) miss an opportunity

*She had a chance to continue her studies, but she **passed it up** to get married.*

**pick up** (intransitive) increase in momentum or pace

*Business is very slow this season; we hope it will **pick up** soon.*

**pick up** (separable) lift

*When I dropped my bracelet on the sidewalk, he **picked it up** and handed it to me.*

**run up** (separable) increase charges through excessive use

*He made a lot of long-distance calls and **ran up** my phone bill.*

**set up** (separable) arrange

*We **set the appointment up** for November.*

**set up** (separable) cause an innocent person to be blamed for something

*He is not guilty of the theft; the hoodlums **set him up**.*

**set up** (separable) establish in a career or business



*His uncle **set him up** in the family trade.*

**show up** (intransitive) appear

*We will leave early if everyone **shows up** on time.*

**show up** (separable) appear to be better than someone else

*They practiced the dance steps at home and **showed** everybody else **up** at the party.*

**sign up** register

*We are **signing up** for your course.*

**sign up** (separable) arrange an activity for someone

*They **signed us up** to work on Thursday night.*

**slip up** (intransitive) make a mistake

*We intended to send the package last week, but our workers **slipped up**.*

**stand up** (intransitive) move to one's feet; be on one's feet

*When the president entered the room, everyone **stood up**.*

*When you teach school, you have to **stand up** all day.*

**stand up** (separable) miss a commitment without explaining

*He went to pick her up but she wasn't there; she had **stood him up**.*

**step up** (separable) increase the speed

***Step it up** a little; we need to go faster.*

**take up** (separable) pursue a new interest

*She **took up** knitting when she was pregnant.*

**take up** (separable) to shorten

*The pants are too long; we will have to **take them up**.*

**tear up** (separable) rip into small pieces

*The letter made her so angry that she **tore it up**.*

**throw up** (intransitive) vomit

*The poor child got sick and **threw up**.*

**turn up** (intransitive) appear

*She is very unreliable; we never know if she will **turn up**.*

**turn up** (separable) increase in volume or speed

***Turn the radio up**; this is a great song.*

**wake up** (intransitive) open one's eyes after sleeping

*What time do you usually **wake up**?*

**wake up** (separable) cause someone to stop sleeping

*Please **wake me up** in the morning.*

**wrap up** (separable) finish a session

*We've been practicing for three hours; let's **wrap it up**.*

**write up** (separable) explain in writing

*His ideas were good, and they asked him to **write them up**.*

## PRACTICE

### 58-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. The frog \_\_\_\_\_ up onto the rock.

ran

walked

hopped

raced

2. Jack and Jill ran up the \_\_\_\_\_.

house

well

back yard

hill

3. We aren't there yet. We have to go two more blocks up the \_\_\_\_\_.

street

steps

farm

stairs

4. We are trying to \_\_\_\_\_ up a little money.

think

hope

scrape

work

5. The children made up a delightful \_\_\_\_\_.

fort

playground

swings

game

6. She tore the letter up into little \_\_\_\_\_.

pictures

pieces

papers

words

### 58-2. Use an expression with **up** to express the following:

1. She kept walking from one side of the room to the other.

2. I hope you decide soon.

3. It's your decision.

4. The workers are protesting in anger.

5. I can't go because I have a lot of work to do.

### 58-3. Use **up** in a phrasal verb to express the following:

1. My mom got really angry when she found out.

2. Please don't talk about that topic at the meeting.
3. He will need to do extra work in order to reach the level of the other students.
4. I hope this news will make you happier.
5. Please move faster!
6. Don't stop doing such a great job!
7. She can't walk as fast as you do.
8. I hope she doesn't refuse this opportunity.
9. She explained her ideas in writing.

## UNIT 59:

# With

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. With means in the company of.

**Pattern 1** verb + *with* + noun

*She is **with** her sister.*

*I danced **with** him.*

Typical verbs used before *with*:

**be, chat, converse, dance, drink, eat, go, leave, live, play, stay, study, talk, travel, walk, work**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *with* + noun

*She spent the weekend **with** us.*

Typical verbs used with this pattern:

**dance, drink, eat, leave, play, spend, study**

### Related Expressions

**to be tied up with** to be occupied with at the moment

*He can't come to the phone; he **is tied up with** a client.*

**to be in a discussion with** to be talking seriously to

*The boss **is in a discussion with** the manager right now.*

#### 2. With means in the same place as.

**Pattern 1** *be* + *with* + noun

*My hat **is with** my scarf.*

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *with* + noun

*Put your coat **with** mine.*

*She left her children **with** the babysitter.*

Typical verbs:

**keep, leave, put, store**

### 3. With can mean **added together**.

**Pattern** noun + **with** + noun

*She always drinks her coffee **with** sugar.*

*The hotel **with** meals will cost two hundred dollars a day.*

### 4. With can describe something by indicating what it **has**.

**Pattern 1** noun + **with** + noun

*Did you see a woman **with** a baby a few minutes ago?*

*I have an article **with** pictures for my presentation.*

**Pattern 2** **be** + past participle + **with** + noun

*You will **be** provided **with** two sets of keys.*

Past participles used with this pattern:

**caught, discovered, found, furnished, provided, seen**

### Related Expression

**to be blessed with** to be lucky to have

*He is **blessed with** good health and good looks.*

### 5. With can describe a **manner of behavior**.

**Pattern 1** verb + **with** + noun

*Please handle the piano **with** care.*

*They accepted the proposal **with** enthusiasm.*

Typical nouns used after **with**:

**anger, care, compassion, courage, delight, discretion, disdain, distress, enthusiasm, fear, feeling, glee, grace, gratitude, happiness, hatred, humility, indifference, joy, kindness, love, optimism, pleasure, pride, regard, sadness, shame, skill, sympathy, tenderness, thanks, understanding**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + **with** + noun

*She greeted us **with** a big smile.*

*He always starts work **with** a grumble.*

Typical nouns used after *with*:

**air, cry, expression, frown, greeting, grumble, grunt, handshake, hug, kiss, look, promise, question, shudder, sigh, smile, smirk, thank you, word**

**Pattern 3** *be* + adjective + *with* + noun (thing)

*Please **be** careful **with** the piano.*

*I hope he **is** successful **with** the mission.*

Typical adjectives:

**awkward, careful, clumsy, creative, dexterous, quick, skillful, slow, successful, talented, unsuccessful**

**Pattern 4** *be* + adjective + *with* + noun (person)

*She **is** very patient **with** me.*

*The boss **has been** frank **with** her about her performance.*

Typical adjectives:

**awkward, belligerent, curt, flexible, forthcoming, frank, friendly, generous, helpful, honest, impatient, open, patient, stiff, sympathetic, truthful**

## **6. With can describe someone's feelings about something.**

**Pattern** *be* + adjective + *with* + noun

*The child **was** bored **with** her toys.*

*They **are** very happy **with** their new home.*

Typical adjectives used with this pattern:

**bored, comfortable, content, delighted, disappointed, frustrated, happy, impressed, pleased, satisfied, thrilled, uncomfortable, unhappy, upset**

## **Related Expressions**

**to be in love with** to have a romantic feeling toward

*He **is** (madly) **in love with** her.*

**to be fed up with** to have reached one's limit or patience toward

*She is leaving her job because she **is fed up with** the restrictions on her creativity.*

## 7. With can indicate a working relationship.

**Pattern 1** *be* + *with* + noun

*She is with a real estate company.*

**Pattern 2** *be* + past participle + *with* + noun

*He is involved with that organization.*

*They are not concerned with our group.*

**Pattern 3** *work* + *with* + noun

*His mother works with us.*

## 8. With can indicate the instrument or tool used for an action.

**Pattern 1** verb + *with* + noun

*She writes with a pen.*

Typical verbs used before *with*:

**color, clean, cut, dig, draw, eat, paint, serve, sweep, wash, write**

**Pattern 2** verb + noun + *with* + noun

*The boy drew a flower with his crayons.*

*I swept the garage with a big broom.*

Typical verbs:

**attach, clean, clear, cut, dig, draw, dry, eat, erase, fasten, hit, move, nail, open, paint, plow, season, serve, sweep, wash, write**

## 9. With can indicate a noun that covers or fills an area.

**Pattern** verb + noun + *with* + noun

*She filled the pitcher with lemonade.*

*They planted the bed with white flowers.*

Typical verbs:

**cover, cram, fill, frost, heap, ice, pack, paint, plant, smear, spread, sprinkle, stuff**

## 10. With can indicate struggle

**Pattern 1** verb + *with* + noun

*My colleague disagrees **with** the management.*

*He is always fighting **with** his brother.*

Typical verbs:

**argue, clash, compete, conflict, differ, disagree, fight, quarrel, wrestle**

## Related Expression

**to have it out with** to express anger verbally

*After two years of frustration, he finally **had it out with** his boss.*

**Pattern 2** *have + a + noun + with*

*She **has an** argument **with** him every morning.*

*They **are having a** quarrel **with** the neighbors right now.*

Typical nouns:

**argument, bout, contest, disagreement, fight, match, quarrel**

**Pattern 3** *be + in + noun + with*

*She **is in** competition **with** him for the promotion.*

*It's too bad your ideas **are in** conflict **with** those of the majority.*

## 11. With can indicate support or cooperation.

**Pattern 1** *verb + with + noun*

*They are cooperating **with** the authorities.*

*You have to comply **with** the rules.*

Typical verbs:

**agree, collaborate, comply, concur, cooperate, empathize, harmonize, help, negotiate, sympathize, work**

## Related Expressions

**to get along with** to cooperate with

*I **get along with** my roommate, even though she is not my best friend.*

**to be with** to support

*Don't be nervous when you are giving your speech; we **are all with** you.*

**Pattern 2** *verb + a + noun + with + noun*

*She signed **a** contract **with** us.*



Typical nouns:

**agreement, business, contract, friendship, partnership, relationship**

## Expression

**to do business with** to have negotiations with

*We don't **do business with** them anymore.*

**Pattern 3** *be + in + noun + with + noun*

*Are you **in** agreement **with** the decisions they made?*

Typical nouns before *with*:

**accord, agreement, cahoots, collaboration, compliance, concert, concurrence, cooperation, harmony, partnership, sympathy**

## 12. With means at the same time as.

*He rises **with** the sun.*

*They opened the show **with** a song.*

Typical verbs:

**begin, celebrate, close, dedicate, end, start**

## 13. With means at the same rate as.

*Wine improves **with** age.*

*Wisdom comes **with** experience.*

***With** time, you will forget.*

## 14. With means in the same direction as.

**Pattern** *verb + with + the + noun*

*It will take longer because we will be **with the** traffic.*

*They drifted down the river **with the** current.*

Typical verbs used before *with*:

**be, cruise, drift, drive, float, go, ride, sail**

Typical nouns used after *with the*:

**current, flow, tide, traffic, wind**

## 15. With can indicate **separation**.

**Pattern** verb expression + *with* + noun

*I hate to part **with** my old books.*

*Our company severed relations **with** that client years ago.*

*He is through **with** her; he doesn't want to see her again.*

Typical verb expressions used before *with*:

**be finished, be through, break up, cut ties, fall out, part, part company, sever relations, split up**

## 16. With is used in a **comparison** or **contrast**.

**Pattern 1** noun + verb + *with* + noun

*Your blouse clashes **with** your skirt.*

Verbs commonly used with this pattern:

**clash, compare, contrast, go, look good**

**Pattern 2** *compare/contrast* + noun + *with* + noun

*Let's compare this computer **with** that one.*

## 17. With can indicate **equality**.

**Pattern** *be* + adjective + *with* + noun

*This side **is** not even **with** that side.*

*Our **team** is tied **with** theirs: the score is two to two.*

Typical adjectives used before *with*:

**comparable, even, level, on a par, parallel, tied**

## 18. With can indicate the **cause of a condition**.

**Pattern 1** adjective + *with* + noun

*The branches of the trees were heavy **with** snow.*

*The girl's face is wet **with** tears.*

**Pattern 2** verb in gerund form + *with* + noun

*The newlyweds were beaming **with** happiness.*

Typical verbs used before *with*:

aching, beaming, crying, dancing, fuming, screaming, shouting, smiling, trembling

Typical nouns used after *with*:

anger, fear, glee, happiness, joy, mirth, rage, shame, zeal

**Pattern 3** *with + the + noun*

*With the traffic in this city, it takes a long time to get to work.*

*Their lifestyle changed completely **with the** birth of their first baby.*

Typical nouns used after *with the*:

arrival, bills, birth, change, crime, death, decrease, departure, guests, increase, move, problems, rain, traffic, trouble, worries

**Pattern 4** *with + (all) + possessive noun or pronoun + noun*

*With all his talent, he should be famous.*

*She is quite popular, **with all** her beauty and charm.*

Typical nouns after *with*:

beauty, charm, education, influence, intelligence, money, power, talent

## 19. With can mean despite.

**Pattern** *with + (all) + possessive noun or pronoun + noun*

*I love him **with all** his faults.*

***With all** her problems, she is quite serene.*

## Expressions

**to be with someone** to follow or understand

*Please repeat that; **I'm not with** you.*

**to be charged with something** to be formally accused of a crime

*The boy **was charged with** breaking and entering.*

**Down with something** a rallying call to eliminate oppressors

***Down with** the tyrants!*

**Off with someone** a call for someone to leave

***Off with** you, and don't come back!*

## Phrasal Verbs

**(get) on with** (nonseparable) to start something right away

*Let's **get on with** this job; I want to go home early.*

***On with** the show!*

**get away with** escape a misdeed without penalty

*He tore up his parking fine and **got away with** it.*

**put up with** tolerate

*The house is beautiful, but I can't **put up with** the noise of the airplanes.*

## PRACTICE

### 59-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. I hope you will \_\_\_\_\_ with me at the party.

fight

discuss

dance

look

2. The hotel room is \_\_\_\_\_ with a double bed.

built

furnished

seen

discovered

3. The carpenter showed us his work with \_\_\_\_\_.

pride

promise

health

saw

4. They need something new to play with. They are bored with their \_\_\_\_\_.

days

nights

toys

food

5. Our congressman is not concerned with our \_\_\_\_\_.

offers

problems

money

voting

6. She has a new job. She is now with \_\_\_\_\_.

a new car

a new husband

a new company

a new hairstyle

7. They get along well. They work in \_\_\_\_\_ with each other.

singing

band

chorus

harmony

8. She \_\_\_\_\_ with him because he was lazy.

sailed

drove

got tired

broke up

9. He was \_\_\_\_\_ with anger.

dancing

beaming

shouting

smiling

10. Does this dress look good with \_\_\_\_\_?

these shoes

these bags

these combs

these brushes

**59-2. Use an expression with *with* to express the following:**

1. They were accused of starting the fire.
2. Remove the dictator!
3. She never argues with her roommate.

**59-3. Use *with* in a phrasal verb to express the following:**

1. I can't tolerate his attitude.
2. I don't know how he escapes punishment for his crimes.
3. I'm getting impatient. Let's begin!

## UNIT 60:

# Within

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Within means **not outside a place**.

**Pattern** *be + within + noun*

*Those schools **are within** the county jurisdiction.*

*There is too much commotion **within the** building.*

Typical nouns used after *within*:

**area, building, city, country, county, jurisdiction, state, territory, walls**

#### 2. Within means **less than a period of time**.

*I will return **within** the hour.*

*He will finish **within** five minutes.*

#### 3. Within means **less than a distance**.

*There is a hospital **within** five miles of the school.*

*The storm was **within** ten miles of our town.*

#### 4. Within means **possible; not exceeding the limits of something**.

**Pattern** *be + within + (one's) noun*

*At last, the beach **is within** sight!*

*A fortune **is within** our reach if we are lucky.*

Typical nouns used after *within*:

**bounds, hearing, range, reach, sight, the law, the limit, the rules**

### Expression

**to keep within the family** to not reveal something to anyone who is not a family member

*That man has a strange history, but they **keep it within the family**.*

## PRACTICE

**60-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.**

1. There is some crime within this \_\_\_\_\_.  
neighborhood          teacher          garage          playground
2. We will be back momentarily. We will be back within \_\_\_\_\_.  
ten hours          ten years          ten minutes          a year
3. We are almost at the beach. The water is within \_\_\_\_\_.  
the ocean          the river          noise          sight

## UNIT 61:

# Without

### Basic Meanings

#### 1. Without indicates the **absence of somebody**.

*I can't live **without** you.*

*Please don't leave **without** me.*

#### 2. Without means **not having**.

**Pattern** verb + **without** + (any) noun

*That young mother manages **without any** help.*

*We are **without** money this month.*

#### 3. Without means **not using**.

**Pattern** verb + noun + **without** + noun

*We did the crossword puzzle **without** a dictionary.*

*She can't read **without** her glasses.*

#### 4. Without means **not performing an action**.

**Pattern** **without** + verb in gerund form

*She passed the test **without** studying.*

*He left **without** saying good-bye.*

### Expressions

**without a doubt** certainly

*She is **without a doubt** the best chairperson we have ever had.*

**without fail** a demand or promise to do something



*Be here at six A.M. **without fail**.*

*I will finish within three days **without fail**.*

**without ceremony** immediately and quietly

*He took charge **without ceremony** and began to work.*

**that goes without saying** that is understood to be true

*You will be paid well for your work; **that goes without saying**.*

## PRACTICE

### 61-1. Choose the best word or words for each blank space.

1. She's freezing. She left school without \_\_\_\_\_.  
teacher                      hat                      her coat                      homework
2. She can now ride her bicycle without \_\_\_\_\_.  
handlebars                      horn                      training wheels                      spokes
3. They left the restaurant without \_\_\_\_\_.  
food                      coat                      noise                      paying

### 61-2. Use an expression with *without* to express the following:

1. She was certainly my best teacher.
2. We promise to finish the job tomorrow.
3. That is understood to be true.
4. The new boss quietly began to work.



PART TWO

# **Prepositions by Function**

## How to Use Part Two

Part Two is the most important section of this book for learning the most basic everyday usage of prepositions. The expressions and formulas described here indicate specific facts and must be used correctly. Incorrect usage could cause great misunderstanding!

1. Begin with Unit 1.
2. Read each example quietly, and make sure you understand its meaning. If you are not sure, ask for help from your teacher, a classmate, or someone who speaks both English and your native language.
3. Read each example aloud. Do this several times, until it sounds and feels natural. If possible, ask a native speaker of English to read each example out loud for you. Then ask that person to listen to your pronunciation and tell you if it is acceptable.
4. Think of a new example sentence for each category, and write it down.
5. When you feel confident that you have memorized each item, do the exercises at the end of the chapter. Write your answers to the exercises in your notebook—not in the book! (This way, you can go back and test yourself often.)
6. Compare your answers with the Answer Key on p. 303. If all of your answers are correct—that is wonderful! If you have any incorrect answers, read the explanation again. Write down the correct answers in complete sentences.
7. When you feel ready, do the entire exercise page again.
8. Continue to do this until you have completed the exercises with no errors.
9. Practice the items you have learned as often as possible.
10. Now begin Unit 2, in the same way as Unit 1. Then continue until you have completed all of Part Two.

11. Test yourself often to make sure you have memorized all the expressions. You will be able to use them in conversation with confidence.

# UNIT 1:

## Time

### BEFORE

—previous to a time

*Ten o'clock is before eleven o'clock.*

### AFTER

—subsequent to a time

*Three o'clock is after two o'clock.*

### DURING

—for part of a period

*He slept during the day. (He slept from 2 P.M. until 4 P.M.)*

—at the same time as another event

*She slept during the football game.*

### THROUGH, THROUGHOUT

—for an entire period, and after

*He slept through the day. (He slept from 9 A.M. until 9 P.M.)*

*He slept throughout the day.*

### AT AROUND, AT ABOUT

—at an approximate time

*We will leave at around six.*

*We will get there at about seven.*

### BY

—no later than a time

*We have to be there by seven-fifteen.*

by the time—when

*By the time you get here, we will have left.*

### TO, OF

—minutes before the hour

*It's ten to four.*

*It's ten of four.*

### TOWARDS

—nearing a period of time

*It was towards evening when she called.*

### BETWEEN

—after a time, and before another time

*They will arrive between five and six.*

### WITHIN

—between now and a length of time

*They will be here within ten minutes.*

**BEYOND, PAST**

---

—after a time

*Our guests stayed beyond midnight.*

*Our guests stayed past midnight.*

**FOR**

---

—during a length of time

*They have been here for a week.*

**IN**

---

**in time**—not too late for an event

*Try to get here in time to help me.*

—a century, decade, year, season, month

*He lived in the sixteenth century.*

*That singer was popular in the eighties.*

*We came here in the fall.*

*We came here in October.*

*We came here in 1997.*

—after a length of time

*She will be here in two weeks. in the morning, afternoon, evening*

*They work in the morning.*

*He comes home in the afternoon.*

*We are going to go out in the evening.*

**UNTIL**

---

—up to, but not after a time

*The party will last until ten.*

**SINCE**

---

—between a past time and now

*They have been here since last Thursday.*

**ON**

---

**on time**—at the required time

*He is punctual; he always arrives on time.*

**on the dot**—at the exact minute

*Be here at ten o'clock on the dot.*

—a day, days, a date, dates

*She is coming on Monday.*

*She doesn't work on Tuesdays.*

*I heard that singer on my birthday.*

*We came here on October sixth.*

*We came here on October 6, 1997.*

**AT**

---

**at night**

*He works at night.*

—a specific time

*He comes home at ten o'clock.*

**at present**—now

*We are studying at present.*

**at the moment**—now

*I am not working at the moment.*

## WITH

---

—at the same time as

*She wakes up with the sun.*

## OUT OF

**to be out of time**—to have no time left  
*We didn't finish, and now we are out of time.* **to run out of time**—use up remaining time.

*We didn't eat because we ran out of time.*

## AHEAD OF

---

**to be ahead of time**—to be early  
*I'm glad you got here ahead of time; you can help me get ready for the party.*

## UP

---

**time is up**—there is no official time remaining for a specific activity.

*I sat down when the bell rang because my time was up.*

## PRACTICE

### 1-1. Write the correct preposition in each blank:

1. Their daughter was born \_\_\_\_\_ 1998  
\_\_\_\_\_ October  
\_\_\_\_\_ the 18th  
\_\_\_\_\_ four-thirty  
\_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon.
2. I haven't seen my friend \_\_\_\_\_ August.
3. He was here \_\_\_\_\_ two weeks.
4. The play starts \_\_\_\_\_ seven o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ the dot, so be sure to be here \_\_\_\_\_ six-fifty.
5. Her mother is going to be here \_\_\_\_\_ the tenth \_\_\_\_\_ July. She will be here \_\_\_\_\_ two weeks.
6. Our neighbors always have a party \_\_\_\_\_ New Year's Eve. It usually starts \_\_\_\_\_ ten o'clock and lasts \_\_\_\_\_ the next morning.

7. Some people never go out \_\_\_\_\_ night because they get up so early \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.
8. Four o'clock is \_\_\_\_\_ five o'clock.
9. The baby didn't sleep \_\_\_\_\_ the night because he was so hungry.
10. I heard a noise \_\_\_\_\_ the night, but I was too sleepy to get up.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ the moment we are trying to study.
12. Some of us couldn't finish the test because the time was \_\_\_\_\_.



## UNIT 2:

# Location

IN	ON	AT
—a continent, a country, a state, a city, a town <i>She lives in California.</i> <i>She lives in San Francisco.</i>	—a street, a floor <i>She lives on Oak Street.</i>  <i>She lives on the fourth floor.</i>	—a building, a house or apartment number  <i>She lives at The Manor.</i>  <i>She lives at 1260 Oak Street.</i>
		at home—in one's own house at work—at one's job at school—attending school at church—attending church services
—a room, an area of a room <i>She is in the kitchen, in the corner.</i> <i>Our theater seats are in the balcony.</i>	—an outside area <i>He is standing on the corner.</i> <i>He has an outdoor grill on the balcony.</i>	—a work area inside  <i>She is at the kitchen sink.</i>
—a comfortable chair <i>He sat in the chair and watched television.</i>	—a straight chair, a sofa, a couch <i>He sat on the chair and ate his dinner.</i> <i>We sat on the sofa and watched television.</i>	

**in bed**—under the covers

—the water, the air, the environment

*They are swimming in the water.*

*There is pollution in the air.*

—the center, the middle

*Our house is in the center of town.*

—the north/south/east/west  
*New England is in the north of the United States.*

—a bodily attack

*The stone hit me in the face.*

—a vehicle one cannot walk around in (car/small boat/small plane/helicopter)

*Please ride in the car with us.*

**on the bed**—on top of the covers

—facing a coast, a beach

*The house is on the beach.*

—the side, left, right, surface

*Our house is on the left side of the street.*

—the north side/south side/east side/west side  
*Our house is on the south side of town.*

—the surface of the body

*He has a scratch on his arm.*

—a vehicle one can walk around on (bus/train/large boat/airplane)

*Please ride on the bus with us.*

—an individual vehicle (horse, bicycle, motorcycle, skates)

*He came over on his bike.*

—the coast, the beach

*The whole family is at the beach.*

—the beginning, start, end

*Our house is at the end of the street.*

## ABOUT, AROUND, THROUGHOUT

---

—in all areas of a place

*The clothes were thrown about the room.*

*The papers were lying around the house.*

*There was trash throughout the house.*

## ACROSS

---

—in all areas of a flat surface

*The toys were scattered across the floor.*

## WITH

---

—in the same place as someone or something else

*The baby is with the nurse.*

*I'm going to put my bag with yours on the chair.*

## OVER, ABOVE

---

The white box is **over** the black box.

The white box is **above** the black box.

## BELOW, BENEATH, UNDER, UNDERNEATH

---



The black box is **below** the white box.

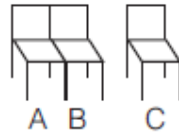
The black box is **beneath** the white box.

The black box is **under** the white box.

The black box is **underneath** the white box.

## AGAINST

## BY, BESIDE, NEXT TO



Chair A is **against** Chair B.

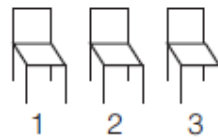
Chair B is **by** Chair C.

Chair B is **beside** Chair C.

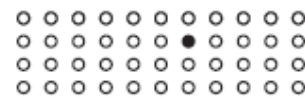
Chair B is **next to** Chair C.

## BETWEEN

## AMONG



Chair 2 is **between** Chair 1 and Chair 3.



The black spot is **among** the white spots.

## ON, ON TOP OF, UPON

## OFF



The white lamp is **on** the table.

The white lamp is **on top of** the table.

The white lamp is **upon** the table.



The black lamp is **off** the table.

## IN, INSIDE, WITHIN

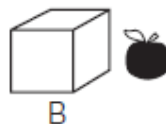
## OUT OF, OUTSIDE OF



Apple A is **in** the box.

Apple A is **inside** the box.

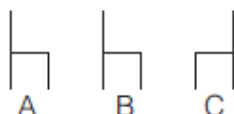
Apple A is **within** the box.



Apple B is **out of** the box.

Apple B is **outside of** the box.

## ACROSS FROM, OPPOSITE    IN FRONT OF, AHEAD OF    IN BACK OF, BEHIND



Chair C is **across from** Chair B.  
Chair C is **opposite** Chair B.

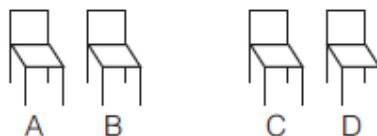
Chair B is **in front of** Chair A.  
Chair B is **ahead of** Chair A.

Chair A is **in back of** Chair B.  
Chair A is **behind** Chair B.

## NEAR, CLOSE TO

## FAR FROM

## BEYOND



Chair A is **near** Chair B.  
Chair A is **close to** Chair B.

Chair C is **far from** Chair B.

Chair D is **beyond** Chair C.

## AT THE TOP OF

## AT THE BOTTOM OF



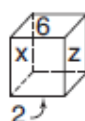
The X is **at the top of** the box.

The Z is **at the bottom of** the box.

## ON THE TOP OF

## ON THE BOTTOM OF

## ON THE SIDE OF



The number 6 is **on the top of** the box.

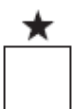










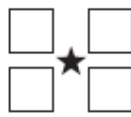
The number 2 is **on the bottom of** the box.

The X and the Z are **on the sides of** the box.

## PRACTICE

### 2-1. Write in the correct prepositions:

#### A. Where is the star?

1.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box
2.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box
3.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box
4.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box
5.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box
6.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box
7.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box
8.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box
9.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box
10.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box
11.  \_\_\_\_\_ the boxes
12.  \_\_\_\_\_ the boxes

B. Her apartment is \_\_\_\_\_ Florida,  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Miami,  
 \_\_\_\_\_ The Palms  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Ocean Drive  
 \_\_\_\_\_ number 407.

She lives \_\_\_\_\_ the fourth floor  
 \_\_\_\_\_ a very nice  
 apartment.

She is often \_\_\_\_\_ school  
 or \_\_\_\_\_ work.

When she is \_\_\_\_\_ home, she is usually  
 asleep \_\_\_\_\_ bed.

However, right now she is  
 \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen,  
 \_\_\_\_\_ the stove, cooking.

Soon she will sit down  
 \_\_\_\_\_ a dining room  
 chair  
 \_\_\_\_\_ the table  
 \_\_\_\_\_ the corner, to  
 eat her dinner.

She will probably be out  
 \_\_\_\_\_ the balcony  
 after dinner,  
 sitting \_\_\_\_\_ a comfortable  
 chair and relaxing.



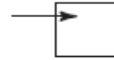
## UNIT 3: Direction

### ACROSS



The line goes **across** the box.

### IN, INTO



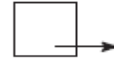
The line goes **in** the box.  
The line goes **into** the box.

### ALONG, BY



The line goes **along** the box.  
The line goes **by** the box.

### OUT OF



The line goes **out of** the box.

### PAST



The line goes **past** the box.

### ONTO



The line goes **onto** the table.

### THROUGH



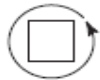
The line goes **through** the box.

### OFF



The line goes **off** the table.

### AROUND



The line goes **around** the box.

### OVER



The line goes **over** the hill.

### TO, TOWARD



The solid line goes **to** the box.  
The dotted line goes **toward** the box.

### DOWN



The line goes **down** the hill.

### UP



The line goes **up** the hill.

### FROM, AWAY FROM



The line goes **from** the box.  
The line goes **away from** the box.

### WITH



The boat sails **with** the wind.

### BACK TO



The line goes **back to** the box.

### FOR



The plane is leaving **for** Spain.

### BACK FROM





The dotted line comes **back from** the box.




## PRACTICE

### 3-1. Where Is the dotted line going?

1.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box

2.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box

3.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box

4.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box

5.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box

6.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box


7.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box

8.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box

9.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box

10.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box

11.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box

12.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box

13.  \_\_\_\_\_ the box

14.  \_\_\_\_\_ the table

15.  \_\_\_\_\_ the table

## UNIT 4:

# Number

About, around, above, over, under, and between are adverbs when used before numbers.

### ABOUT, AROUND

---

—approximately

*There were about two hundred people there.*

*There were around two hundred people there.*

### ABOVE, OVER

---

—more than

*She has over a hundred books on that subject.*

*She has above a hundred books on that subject.*

### UNDER

---

—less than

**\$895**

*The car costs under a thousand dollars.*

### BETWEEN

---

—higher than one number and lower than another

**\$21.50**

*The tickets will cost between twenty and twenty-five dollars.*

### PLUS

---

—indicates addition

**5 + 6 = 11**

*Five plus six equals eleven.*

### FROM

---

---

—indicates subtraction

$$10 - 3 = 7$$

*Three from ten equals seven.*

## BY

---

—indicates multiplication

$$3 \times 4 = 12$$

*Three multiplied by four equals twelve.*

## INTO

---

—indicates division

$$3 \overline{)12}^4$$

*Three into twelve equals four.*

## OF

---

—indicates a fraction

*One-half of twelve is six.*

$$1/2 \times 12 = 6$$

*One-third of nine is three.*

$$1/3 \times 9 = 3$$

*Three-quarters of twelve is nine.*

$$3/4 \times 12 = 9$$

indicates all, part, or none of a specific plural or noncount noun, following **all**, **many**, **much**, **a lot**, **lots**, **plenty**, **enough**, **several**, **some**, **a few**, **a little**, **a bit**, **none**

*All of the books on the table are yours.*

*Some of the money went to charity.*

*None of the furniture is valuable.*

## PRACTICE

### 4-1. Fill in each blank with the appropriate word:

1. He has (approximately) \_\_\_\_\_ five hundred dollars in cash.
2. There are (more than) \_\_\_\_\_ twenty-five people here.
3. I paid (less than) \_\_\_\_\_ ten dollars for this meal.
4. The number six is \_\_\_\_\_ one and twelve.
5.  $7 + 4 = 11$  Seven \_\_\_\_\_ four equals eleven.
6.  $12 - 2 = 10$  Two \_\_\_\_\_ twelve equals ten.
7.  $2 \overline{)12}^6$  Two \_\_\_\_\_ twelve equals six.

8. One-tenth \_\_\_\_\_ one hundred equals ten.

## UNIT 5:

# Weather

DURING	IN	ON
—weather events (a storm, flood, hurricane, tornado, earthquake)	—types of weather (good, bad, foul, stormy cloudy, humid, wet, dry, hot, cold, sticky)	—types of days, periods of the day (nice days, sunny mornings, humid nights, rainy weekends)
	<b>in the rain</b> <b>in the snow</b>	
<i>We stayed at home during the storm.</i>	<i>They swim in good weather.</i> <i>He walked home in the rain.</i> <i>The children played in the snow.</i>	<i>I sit on the balcony on sunny mornings.</i> <i>We play cards on rainy weekends.</i>

### PRACTICE

#### 5-1. Fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions:

1. I don't like to go out \_\_\_\_\_ bad weather.
2. The children love to play \_\_\_\_\_ the snow.
3. They have to stay inside \_\_\_\_\_ the storm.
4. We often go to the beach \_\_\_\_\_ sunny days.
5. She loves to walk \_\_\_\_\_ the rain.
6. She gets depressed \_\_\_\_\_ rainy days.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ the hurricane we stayed in the basement.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ cold days you have to wear a warm coat, a hat, and gloves.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ cold weather it is nice to sit by the fire.
10. What do you do \_\_\_\_\_ snowy evenings?

## UNIT 6:

# Source of Information

IN	ON	FROM A PERSON OR PEOPLE
—written material (book, magazine, article, newspaper)	—electronically (the radio, the Internet, the telephone, television social media, _____ (name of social medium or app)	—graphic material (photo, video, picture, movie, film)
<i>I read it in a book.</i> <i>She found the article in a magazine.</i> <i>We saw you in a movie.</i>	<i>I heard it on the radio.</i> <i>They saw him on television.</i>	

### PRACTICE

#### 6-1. Fill in each blank with the appropriate preposition:

1. I saw your picture \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper.
2. He found the information \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet.
3. She heard the news \_\_\_\_\_ television last night.
4. The video went viral \_\_\_\_\_ social media.
5. I read that \_\_\_\_\_ a book.
6. He got those dates \_\_\_\_\_ his professor.
7. We watched that show \_\_\_\_\_ television.
8. The article was \_\_\_\_\_ a magazine.

9. There was a good program \_\_\_\_\_ the radio yesterday.
10. Did you talk to her \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone?



## UNIT 7:

# Affiliation

### IN

—part of a group  
(association, bureau,  
category, choir, chorus,  
clan, club, division,  
family, fraternity,  
group, office,  
organization, society,  
sorority, union,  
political party)

*The children in that  
family are all good  
students.*

### OF

—related to origin of  
place, time, culture,  
generation, race,  
religion, sex

*The people of that city  
are very friendly.*

—a special member of  
a group  
*She is the president of  
the college.*

### ON

—part of an exclusive group  
(board, committee, jury, panel,  
team, council, crew, faculty,  
honor roll, list, payroll, squad,  
staff)

*The women on that committee  
are snobs.*

## PRACTICE

### 7-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate prepositions:

1. She is \_\_\_\_\_ the female sex.
2. My sister is \_\_\_\_\_ the jury.
3. She is also \_\_\_\_\_ the women's chorus.
4. Her son is \_\_\_\_\_ the softball team.
5. His wife is \_\_\_\_\_ a different religion.

6. Is your brother \_\_\_\_\_ a fraternity at college?
7. She was the president \_\_\_\_\_ the senior class.
8. I think her cousin is \_\_\_\_\_ the school board.
9. She is \_\_\_\_\_ the garden club.
10. They are going to put you \_\_\_\_\_ the payroll next month.

## UNIT 8:

# Description

ABOUT	ABOVE	LIKE	OF	WITH
—partially describing	—better than	—similar to	—having an unseen characteristic	—having a physical characteristic
<i>There is something cute about him.</i>	<i>He is above deceit.</i>	<i>He is (just) like his father.</i>	<i>She is a woman of honor.</i>	<i>I'm looking for a woman with red hair.</i>
<i>I don't see anything funny about that.</i>	<i>She is above cheating.</i>	<i>He looks like his father.</i>	<i>They are people of low morals.</i>	<i>He is the man with the broken arm.</i>

### PRACTICE

#### 8-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate prepositions:

1. He is \_\_\_\_\_ his brother.
2. She may be nasty, but she is \_\_\_\_\_ cruelty.
3. We don't know anything \_\_\_\_\_ that.
4. His reputation is spotless; he is a man \_\_\_\_\_ decency.
5. There is something special \_\_\_\_\_ him.
6. She's a little crazy, but there is something \_\_\_\_\_ her that I like.
7. Have you seen a man \_\_\_\_\_ white hair and glasses? I can't find my father.
8. He is very polite; he is a man \_\_\_\_\_ good manners.
9. I don't know anybody \_\_\_\_\_ him.

10. My friend is the girl \_\_\_\_\_ curly red hair.

## UNIT 9:

# Wearing

(DRESSED) IN	WITH ... ON	HAVE ... ON
<i>He was dressed in black.</i>	<i>He is the man with the black suit on.</i>	<i>The man has a black suit on.</i>
<i>She came in a red dress.</i>	<i>She is the lady with the red dress on.</i>	<i>The lady has a red dress on.</i>
<i>They are always in jeans.</i>	<i>They are the students with jeans on.</i>	<i>The students have jeans on.</i>

### PRACTICE

#### 9-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate words:

1. The lady was dressed \_\_\_\_\_ red.
2. The lady had a red suit \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The lady \_\_\_\_\_ the red suit \_\_\_\_\_ is my sister.
4. The children who \_\_\_\_\_ blue jackets \_\_\_\_\_ are my nephews.
5. The children were \_\_\_\_\_ blue jackets.
6. The children had blue jackets \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I saw a man \_\_\_\_\_ black.
8. I saw a man \_\_\_\_\_ a black hat \_\_\_\_\_.
9. I saw a man who had \_\_\_\_\_ a black hat.
10. The students are always dressed \_\_\_\_\_ jeans.

## UNIT 10:

# Topic

### Prepositions after Verbs:

ABOUT		AT	IN	OF	ON	OVER
advise	know	aim	assist	advise	agree	argue
agree	laugh	glare	bask	complain	concentrate	battle
argue	lie	grab	cooperate	dream	expound	cry
ask	pray	hit	drown	hear	focus	fight
bother	question	laugh	help	inform	harp	grieve
brag	read	look	interest	know	insist	puzzle
care	remind	rush	invest	learn	report	sigh
complain	say	shoot	participate	remind	speak	worry
contact	sing	snatch	persist	sing	write	
cry	speak	stare	steep	speak		
do	talk	swing	submerge	talk		
dream	teach			tell		
fight	tell			think		
forget	think					
grieve	wonder					
harass	worry					
hear	write					
inform	yell					
joke						

### PRACTICE

#### 10-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate prepositions:

1. She advised me \_\_\_\_\_ my schedule.

2. We argued \_\_\_\_\_ money.
3. They don't know anything \_\_\_\_\_ cars.
4. He helped us \_\_\_\_\_ getting a loan.
5. He taught me a lot \_\_\_\_\_ music.
6. They insisted \_\_\_\_\_ leaving early.
7. Are you going to invest \_\_\_\_\_ that business?
8. What are you looking \_\_\_\_\_?
9. Why did he persist \_\_\_\_\_ asking that question?
10. The girl is going to report \_\_\_\_\_ the environment.
11. One shouldn't cry \_\_\_\_\_ spilled milk.
12. We all tried to participate \_\_\_\_\_ the discussion.
13. Everybody laughed \_\_\_\_\_ him when he put on that silly hat.
14. I am dreaming \_\_\_\_\_ a vacation at the beach.
15. The children are fighting \_\_\_\_\_ the toys.
16. What subjects are you interested \_\_\_\_\_?
17. They are aiming \_\_\_\_\_ very high goals.
18. She reminds me \_\_\_\_\_ her sister.
19. He is totally focused \_\_\_\_\_ his job.
20. It's too bad they lied \_\_\_\_\_ it.

## UNIT 11:

# Recipient

### FOR

—usually indicates benefit to recipient

**after verbs:** bake, build, buy, cook, create, dance, design, do, get, make, play, sing, want something, win, work, write

*I wrote this poem for you.*

**after nouns:**

advice, answer, cure, gift, help, idea, information, job, letter, present, message, news, nothing, plan, present, project, question, secret, something, surprise

*Here is an answer for him.*

—indicates effect on recipient

**after adjectives:** bad, beneficial, better,

### ON

Expressions: **have pity/mercy** *Please have pity on them. The boss had mercy on us and let us go home early. pull a gun/knife on* *The thief pulled a gun on the frightened workers.*

### TO

—usually indicates transfer to recipient

**after verbs:** award, bring, carry, dedicate, deliver, describe, devote, distribute, donate, explain, give, hand, introduce, lend, mention, pass, present, read, recommend, reveal, send, shout, show, sing, speak, submit, suggest, take, tell, write

*I wrote this letter to you.*

**after nouns:**

answer, award, bill, dedication, gift, letter, memorial, monument, present, plaque, remark, scholarship, statement, toast

*They gave the answer to him.*

—indicates effect on recipient

beneficial, detrimental, harmful, helpful, useful,



crucial, good, harmful,  
healthy, helpful,  
important, necessary,  
unacceptable,  
unfavorable, unhealthy,  
unimportant, useful,  
worse

***That environment is  
unhealthy for you.***

unfavorable

***His advice was very useful to  
her.***

—indicates recipient's feelings

**after adjectives:** abhorrent,  
acceptable, annoying, boring,  
confusing, crucial, distasteful,  
disturbing, fascinating,  
gratifying, hurtful, important,  
meaningful, obnoxious,  
pleasing, precious, preferable,  
repulsive, satisfying,  
unacceptable, unimportant,  
vexing, worrisome

***Those comments were hurtful  
to us.***

## **PRACTICE**

### **11-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate prepositions:**

1. I hope they give the award \_\_\_\_\_ him.
2. She cooked a big meal \_\_\_\_\_ us.
3. The police had mercy \_\_\_\_\_ the young hooligans and sent them home.
4. The travel agency had a lot of information \_\_\_\_\_ her.
5. They sent a lot of information \_\_\_\_\_ her.
6. The information was useful \_\_\_\_\_ her.
7. This fresh fruit is good \_\_\_\_\_ you.
8. The news was fascinating \_\_\_\_\_ him.
9. Is the contract acceptable \_\_\_\_\_ you?

10. Practicing is very good \_\_\_\_\_ me.

11. They prepared a wonderful surprise \_\_\_\_\_ her.

12. Are electronic devices harmful \_\_\_\_\_ children?

## UNIT 12:

# State

### Nouns after Prepositions

AT	IN		ON	OUT OF	UNDER
attention	a hurry	disarray	a roll	breath	consideration
ease	a mess	disaster	approval	commission	construction
leisure	a mood	disgrace	board	control	discussion
peace	a rage	disorder	call	danger	investigation
play	a stew	doubt	course	focus	suspicion
rest	anguish	dread	display	gear	
risk	awe	fear	duty	luck	
war	bankruptcy	focus	edge	order	
work	captivity	gear	fire	practice	
	chaos	good health	guard		
	charge	hot water	high/low speed		
	check	jail	high/low volume		
	circulation	love	hold		
	comfort	luck	leave		
	commission	need	loan		
	condition	order	one's best behavior		
	confinement	pain	order		
	conflict	power	parole		
	confusion	ruins	record		
	control	session	sale		
	danger	shape	schedule		
	debt	sickness	standby		

demand	tears	strike
despair	trouble	tap
		target
		track
		trial
		vacation

## PRACTICE

### 12-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate prepositions:

1. The children were \_\_\_\_\_ breath when they finished the game.
2. The new houses are \_\_\_\_\_ construction.
3. She is \_\_\_\_\_ a big hurry.
4. The soldiers stood \_\_\_\_\_ attention.
5. All of the workers are \_\_\_\_\_ strike.
6. They sat there \_\_\_\_\_ comfort all afternoon.
7. I'm afraid she's \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of trouble.
8. He isn't here; he's \_\_\_\_\_ vacation.
9. These smart watches are \_\_\_\_\_ sale this week.
10. The poor man was \_\_\_\_\_ pain.
11. I hope your parents are \_\_\_\_\_ good health.
12. We were talking on the phone and he put me \_\_\_\_\_ hold.
13. That car seems to be \_\_\_\_\_ control.
14. Our boss is \_\_\_\_\_ control of the situation.
15. Both boys are \_\_\_\_\_ investigation.

## UNIT 13:

# Separation

FROM	OF	OFF	OUT OF	WITH
<b>after verbs:</b> drive, keep, move, run, separate, stay, subtract, walk	<b>after verbs:</b> cure, die, relieve, rid	<b>after verbs:</b> break, chop, cut, pick, pull, saw, send, shave, take, tear, throw	<b>after verbs:</b> come, drive, get, go, grab, move, pour, pull, push, rip, sip, squeeze, take, tear	<b>after verbs:</b> be finished, be through, break up, cut ties, fall out, part, part company, sever relations, split up
<b>after adjectives:</b> divorced, separated	<b>after adjectives:</b> cured, relieved, rid			

### PRACTICE

#### 13-1. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate prepositions:

1. I'm glad you finally got rid \_\_\_\_\_ that old car.
2. He drove \_\_\_\_\_ the garage in a big hurry.
3. Are you finished \_\_\_\_\_ that project yet?
4. She walked \_\_\_\_\_ school to her apartment every day.
5. They relieved her \_\_\_\_\_ all her important duties.
6. They are going to send their children \_\_\_\_\_ to camp for the summer.
7. We can't move into the office until they move \_\_\_\_\_ it.
8. Before doing the laundry, I want to separate the dark clothes \_\_\_\_\_ the white ones.

9. Have you seen Sally? She has cut \_\_\_\_\_ all her hair!

10. It is wonderful; he has been cured \_\_\_\_\_ cancer.

## UNIT 14: Attitude

### Adjectives before Prepositions

ABOUT	AT	BY	FOR	IN	OF	TO	WITH
angry	aghast	amazed	concerned	disappointed	afraid	addicted	annoyed
anxious	amazed	amused	eager	interested	ashamed	committed	bored
bashful	amused	annoyed	grateful*		disrespectful	dedicated	content
concerned	angry	bewildered	prepared		envious	devoted	delighted
confused	annoyed	bored	ready		fond	faithful*	disappointed
crazy	astonished	confused	sorry		in favor	grateful*	disgusted
excited	astounded	disgusted			jealous	opposed	fascinated
faithful*	indignant	embarrassed			mindful		frustrated
glad	shocked	fascinated			proud		happy
happy	speechless	frustrated			repentant		impressed
honest	surprised	irritated			respectful		irritated
mad	thrilled	shocked			scared		pleased
nervous	upset				sure		satisfied
objective					suspicious		thrilled
optimistic					terrified		unhappy
pessimistic					tired		upset
right					trusting		
sad					uncertain		
sick					unsure		
silly					wary		
sorry							
unhappy							
upset							
worried							

\* grateful *to* a person/grateful *for* a thing  
 faithful *to* a person/faithful *about* doing something

### PRACTICE

#### 14-1. Fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions:

1. She is ashamed \_\_\_\_\_ her sloppy work.

2. Are you ready \_\_\_\_\_ the test?
3. We are grateful \_\_\_\_\_ you.
4. We are grateful \_\_\_\_\_ your help.
5. He is very annoyed \_\_\_\_\_ me.
6. Try to be objective \_\_\_\_\_ it.
7. They were shocked \_\_\_\_\_ the child's behavior.
8. I am interested \_\_\_\_\_ studying there.
9. He seems to be suspicious \_\_\_\_\_ us.
10. She is a little unsure \_\_\_\_\_ herself.
11. I am so pleased \_\_\_\_\_ the new house.
12. Was he embarrassed \_\_\_\_\_ the gossip?
13. We are optimistic \_\_\_\_\_ the future.
14. The students were not prepared \_\_\_\_\_ the exam.
15. She seems to be unhappy \_\_\_\_\_ something.



## UNIT 15:

# Behavior

### Adjectives before Prepositions

OF SOMEONE	ABOUT SOMETHING	WITH SOMETHING OR SOMEONE ELSE	TO SOMEONE ELSE	TOWARD SOMEONE ELSE	ON SOMEONE ELSE
bad	careless	awkward	charming	affectionate	easy
careless	charming	belligerent	considerate	charitable	hard
charming	crazy	careful	courteous	considerate	rough
crazy	cruel	careless	cruel	cool	soft
crude	good	clumsy	faithful	courteous	strict
cruel	honest	curt	friendly	friendly	tough
evil	kind	flexible	good	gracious	
good	mean	forthcoming	gracious	hospitable	
hateful	nasty	frank	hateful	inhospitable	
honest	nice	friendly	helpful	menacing	
ignorant	rude	generous	hospitable	spiteful	
irresponsible	selfish	honest	inhospitable	sympathetic	
kind	sweet	impatient	kind	thoughtful	
mean	thoughtful	open	mean	warm	
nasty	thoughtless	patient	nice		
nice	understanding	stiff	polite		
responsible	unkind	sympathetic	rude		
rude		truthful	sweet		
selfish			sympathetic		
sweet			truthful		
thoughtful			unkind		
thoughtless					
typical					
unconscionable					
understanding					

unkind

## PRACTICE

### 15-1. Fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions:

1. She was impatient \_\_\_\_\_ us.
2. He was rude \_\_\_\_\_ our absence.
3. Try to be courteous \_\_\_\_\_ everyone.
4. The teacher is too hard \_\_\_\_\_ him.
5. Thank you for being so hospitable \_\_\_\_\_ my mother.
6. They have been very sympathetic \_\_\_\_\_ her.
7. The old man was generous \_\_\_\_\_ his money.
8. Do you think he is being honest \_\_\_\_\_ us?
9. She is faithful \_\_\_\_\_ her husband.
10. The landlord was nasty \_\_\_\_\_ my late payment.

### Verbs before Prepositions

AT	ON	TO	TOWARD	WITH
cheer	center	adapt	contribute	agree
grumble	concentrate	admit	donate	collaborate
guess	dote	agree	give	comply
hint	dwell	appeal	go	concur
hoot	err	consent	head	cooperate
laugh	harp	listen	help	empathize
rebel	pick	object	lean	get along
rejoice	prey	pay attention	push	harmonize
snort	put pressure	react	take steps	help
tremble	wait	relate	work	negotiate
	work	reply		sympathize
		respond		work
		revert		
		subscribe		

## PRACTICE

### 15-2. Fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions:

1. He didn't respond \_\_\_\_\_ my letter.
2. You have to comply \_\_\_\_\_ the agreement.
3. We are working \_\_\_\_\_ our goals.
4. Try not to dwell \_\_\_\_\_ your problems.
5. I don't object \_\_\_\_\_ their coming.
6. They donated \_\_\_\_\_ several charities.
7. She is putting a lot of pressure \_\_\_\_\_ him.
8. I wish you wouldn't laugh \_\_\_\_\_ my mistakes.
9. They rejoiced \_\_\_\_\_ the news.
10. The children cried \_\_\_\_\_ delight.

## Prepositions before Nouns

IN	WITH		IN/WITH	
assent	abandon	humility	anger	dread
cold blood	anger	indifference	apprehension	earnest
compliance	care	joy	approbation	fairness
confusion	compassion	kindness	approval	fear
consent	courage	love	compassion	friendship
defeat	delight	malice	confidence	gratitude
desolation	despair	optimism	contempt	grief
disgrace	discretion	pleasure	defiance	happiness
disobedience	disdain	pride	delight	kindness
dissent	distress	regard	despair	pain
fun	enthusiasm	sadness	disappointment	relief
person	fear	shame	disbelief	sadness
private	feeling	skill	disdain	shame
public	glee	sympathy	disgust	sorrow
reaction	grace	tenderness	dismay	sympathy
someone's absence	gratitude	thanks	distress	trust
someone's presence	happiness	understanding		
	hatred			

## PRACTICE

**15-3. Fill in the blanks with the correct prepositions:**

1. He resigned \_\_\_\_\_ disgrace.
2. She performed her duties \_\_\_\_\_ grace.
3. She hung her head \_\_\_\_\_ sorrow.
4. I told you that \_\_\_\_\_ confidence.
5. You have to deliver it \_\_\_\_\_ person.
6. The woman was clearly \_\_\_\_\_ pain.
7. She does her work \_\_\_\_\_ skill.
8. Please don't talk so loud \_\_\_\_\_ public.
9. The matter must be treated \_\_\_\_\_ discretion.
10. She accepted the invitation \_\_\_\_\_ pleasure.

A large, light gray, stylized letter 'R' graphic that serves as a background element on the left side of the page. It has a thick vertical stem and a curved arm that extends from the top right to the bottom right.

**PART THREE**

# **Using Prepositions**

## How to Use Part Three

This part explores the ways prepositions can be used in a sentence.

1. In each unit, observe the sentence patterns.
2. Read the example sentences aloud.
3. Think of another example sentence that follows the same pattern, and write it down.
4. Do the exercises and check your answers.
5. If you have any mistakes, go back and read the section again.
6. Repeat the entire exercise as many times as you need to, until you have no mistakes. This will help you memorize the patterns so that they “sound right,” and you will soon be using them without having to think about them. Be sure to master each unit before proceeding to the next, as these patterns are tricky.

# UNIT 1:

## Prepositional Phrases

A prepositional phrase is a **preposition plus an object**.

There are three possible patterns:

**preposition + noun**

**preposition + pronoun**

**preposition + verb + -ing**

### Preposition + Noun

#### Singular Nouns

##### NORMAL PATTERNS

preposition	+	noun determiner	+/-	(descriptive + adjectives)	singular common noun
with		a			pen
with		a		red	pen
with		a		new red	pen

**SINGULAR NOUN DETERMINERS: a/an, the, one, this, that, any, each, every, another, either, neither, my, your, his, her, its, our, their, Mary's (or any other possessive noun)**

##### EXCEPTION

preposition	+	ø	+	singular common noun
in				bed
to				school
at				school

#### Singular Proper Nouns

preposition	+	Ø	+	proper noun
with				Mary
for				Mr. Jones

## PRACTICE

**1-1. Correct the mistakes in the following prepositional phrases. Write the correct phrases on a piece of paper.**

1. with pen
2. for other girl
3. to Mary cousin
4. without book
5. from nice boy
6. between Mary and other girl
7. in the Mary's house
8. for the another apple
9. next to tall boy
10. near the Mr. Johnson's house

## Plural Nouns

### NORMAL PATTERNS

preposition	+/-	(noun determiner)	+/-	(descriptive adjective)	+ plural common noun
for					apples
for		the			apples
for				red	apples
for		the		red	apples

**PLURAL NOUN DETERMINERS:** the, two (or any higher number), these, those, any, no, either, neither, other, some, both, few, enough, plenty of, a lot of, lots of, many, all, my, your, his, her, its, our, their, Mary's (or any possessive noun)

A plural noun not preceded by a noun determiner indicates all of the group or in general.



## PLURAL PROPER NOUNS

<b>preposition</b>	<b>+</b>	<b>the</b>	<b>+</b>	<b>proper noun</b>
for		the		Joneses
for		the		United States

### PRACTICE

**1-2. Correct the mistakes in the following prepositional phrases. Write the correct phrases on a piece of paper.**

1. for three apple
2. without friend
3. in United States
4. from many country
5. to a lots of places
6. except this exercises
7. with another friends
8. at plenty of store
9. by other teacher
10. from the Smith

## Noncount Nouns

### NORMAL PATTERNS

<b>preposition</b>	<b>+/-</b>	<b>(noun determiner)</b>	<b>+/-</b>	<b>(descriptive adjective)</b>	<b>+</b>	<b>noncount noun</b>
for						water
for		the				water
for				hot		water
for		this		hot		water

**NONCOUNT NOUN DETERMINERS: the, this, that, any, no, either, neither, some, little, enough, a lot of, lots of, plenty of, much, all, my, your, his, her, its, our, their, Mary's (or any possessive noun)**

A noncount noun not preceded by a noun determiner indicates all of the group or in general.

### PRACTICE

**1-3. Correct the mistakes in the following prepositional phrases. Write the correct phrases on a piece of paper.**

1. for these furnitures
2. for a fresh air
3. with a new jewelry
4. without many hot water
5. with a few machinery
6. of a sugar
7. by mails
8. with too many junk
9. for a meat
10. for three equipment

## **Preposition + Pronoun**

An **object pronoun** may replace a noun object.

<b>TO REPLACE</b>	<b>USE</b>
the speaker	<b>me</b> <i>The letter is for <b>me</b>.</i>
the person addressed	<b>you</b> <i>The letter is for <b>you</b>.</i>
one male person (John)	<b>him</b> <i>The letter is for <b>him</b>.</i>
one female person (Mary)	<b>her</b> <i>The letter is for <b>her</b>.</i>
one thing (a book)	<b>it</b> <i>The letter is about <b>it</b>.</i>
the speaker + one or more others	<b>us</b> <i>The letter is for <b>us</b>.</i>
the people addressed	<b>you</b> <i>The letter is for <b>you</b>.</i>
more than one person (John and Mary)	<b>them</b> <i>The letter is for <b>them</b>.</i>
more than one thing (books)	<b>them</b> <i>The letter is about <b>them</b>.</i>

If there is more than one object after a preposition, use the **object pronouns**:

<i>The letter is for <b>us</b>.</i>	<i>The letter is for <b>you</b> and <b>me</b>.</i>
<i>The letter is for <b>us</b>.</i>	<i>The letter is for <b>him</b> and <b>me</b>.</i>
<i>The letter is for <b>us</b>.</i>	<i>The letter is for <b>her</b> and <b>me</b>.</i>
<i>The letter is for <b>us</b>.</i>	<i>The letter is for <b>them</b> and <b>me</b>.</i>
<i>The letter is for <b>you</b>.</i>	<i>The letter is for <b>you</b> and <b>him</b>.</i>
<i>The letter is for <b>you</b>.</i>	<i>The letter is for <b>you</b> and <b>her</b>.</i>
<i>The letter is for <b>you</b>.</i>	<i>The letter is for <b>you</b> and <b>them</b>.</i>

The letter is for **them**.  
The letter is for **them**.  
The letter is for **them**.  
The letter is for **them**.

The letter is for **him** and **her**.  
The letter is for **her** and **him**.  
The letter is for **him** and **them**.  
The letter is for **her** and **them**.

## PRACTICE

**1-4. Change the underlined nouns to pronouns. Write your answers on a piece of paper:**

1. She paid for the apples.
2. He is excited about the car.
3. Do you study with your classmates?
4. The rug was made by my grandmother.
5. She made it for my sister and me.
6. We will give it to our children.
7. She is very fond of that boy.
8. They put the papers in the trashcan last night.
9. Please don't step on the floor until it is dry.
10. He hopes to get a call from Sam and Mary tomorrow.
11. It won't be the same without David and Amy and you.
12. There has been a lot of tension between Susan and me.
13. She lives near John and me.
14. They have been very kind toward Sarah and the boys.
15. She seems to be getting over her problems.

## Preposition + Verb

A verb following a preposition should be in its **gerund** (basic verb + **ing**) form.

A pencil is used	for	<b>writing.</b>
We are excited	about	<b>going.</b>
They are happy	about	<b>coming.</b>
I am interested	in	<b>learning.</b>
She takes a nap	after	<b>eating.</b>
He is proud	of	<b>winning.</b>

Be careful with the word *to*. It may be a preposition or part of an infinitive.

*To* is a **preposition** after:

be accustomed to	She is accustomed to	<b>driving</b>	fast.
be used to	She is not used to	<b>driving</b>	in traffic.
look forward to	She is looking forward to	<b>driving</b>	home.
admit to	She admitted to	<b>driving</b>	my car.
opposed to	She is opposed to	<b>driving</b>	while drunk.
limited to	She is limited to	<b>driving</b>	during the day.

#### MORE EXAMPLES:

*I have to get accustomed **to getting** up early.*

*She isn't used **to working** all day.*

*The child admitted **to making** a mistake.*

*We are looking forward **to seeing** you soon.*

*They are opposed **to changing** the rules.*

*He is limited **to exercising** in the morning.*

*To* plus a basic verb forms an **infinitive**, and is not a preposition.

Use *to* + **basic verb** after the following verbs:

**agree, appear, ask, be supposed, decide, expect, have, hope, intend, need, offer, plan, pretend, promise, refuse, seem, want, would like, used**

#### EXAMPLES:

*He **agrees to help** with the arrangements.*

*She **appears to be hurt**.*

*They **asked to leave** early.*

*I **need to sleep**.*

*We **want to go** home.*

*Would you **like to play** tennis?*

Be careful with the expressions *be used to* and *used to*.

—*be used to* + gerund means “be accustomed to.”

*I **am used to** working hard.*

*We **are not used to** working at night.*

—**used to** + basic verb means *did in the past*.

*I **used to** work hard when I was in college.*

*We **used to** work at night, but now we work during the day.*

## PRACTICE

**1-5. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb:**

1. She has to decide between \_\_\_\_\_ (study) and \_\_\_\_\_ (work).
2. That machine is great for \_\_\_\_\_ (exercise) the leg muscles.
3. He saved a lot of money by \_\_\_\_\_ (take) the bus to work.
4. Are you used to \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) on the freeway?
5. We decided against \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) that house.
6. They tried to stop her from \_\_\_\_\_ (move) so far away.
7. I am tired of \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) and \_\_\_\_\_ (clean).
8. He is really good at \_\_\_\_\_ (play) the guitar.
9. She is very close to \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the race.
10. You had better eat something before \_\_\_\_\_ (take) the medicine.

**1-6. Choose work or working to complete the following:**

1. She isn't used to \_\_\_\_\_ on Sundays.
2. He used to \_\_\_\_\_ every night.
3. I am opposed to \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
4. She is supposed to \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
5. He admits to \_\_\_\_\_ too little.
6. He agrees to \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
7. We promise to \_\_\_\_\_ next week.
8. He would like to \_\_\_\_\_ every day.
9. They look forward to \_\_\_\_\_ here.
10. She expects to \_\_\_\_\_ here.
11. I am limited to \_\_\_\_\_ here.
12. Have you decided to \_\_\_\_\_ here?
13. They aren't used to \_\_\_\_\_ every day.

## UNIT 2:

# Prepositions in Questions

### A. Basic Sentences with *Be*

#### STATEMENT PATTERN

subject	+	verb	+	preposition	+	object
The letter		is		to		John.
The letter		is		about		money.
The letter		is		from		Springfield.
The letter		is		from		Virginia.

#### YES/NO QUESTION PATTERN

verb	+	subject	+	preposition	+	object?
Is		the letter		to		John?
Is		the letter		about		money?
Is		the letter		from		Springfield?
Is		the letter		from		Virginia?

#### INFORMATION QUESTION PATTERN

question word	+	verb	+	subject	+	preposition?
Who(m)*		is		the letter		to?
What		is		the letter		about?
Where		is		the letter		from?
What state		is		the letter		from?
Which state		is		the letter		from?

\* *Whom* is used in writing and in formal speech. *Who* is used in conversation.

#### EXCEPTION:

The preposition *at* is not used with *where* or *what time*.

#### STATEMENTS:

*The party is at my house.*

*The party is at ten o'clock.*

QUESTIONS:

*Where is the party?*

*What time is the party?*

## PRACTICE

**2-1. Write a question that is answered by the underlined word in each statement.**

1. Yes, the letter is from my mother.
2. No, I am not in Chicago.
3. We are from California.
4. They are from San Francisco.
5. The picture is of my sister.
6. The article is about dieting.
7. The class is at seven-thirty.
8. The concert is at Memorial Stadium.

## B. Basic Sentences with Other Verbs

STATEMENT PATTERN

subject	+	verb	+	preposition	+	object
She		writes		to		John.
She		asks		about		money.
She		writes		from		Springfield.
She		writes		from		Virginia.

YES/NO QUESTION PATTERN

auxiliary verb	+	subject	+	verb	+	preposition	+	object?
Does		she		write		to		John?
Does		she		ask		about		money?
Does		she		write		from		Springfield?
Does		she		write		from		Virginia?

## INFORMATION QUESTION PATTERN

question word	+	auxiliary verb	+	subject	+	verb	+	preposition?
Who(m)		does		she		write		to?
What		does		she		ask		about?
Where		does		she		write		from?
What state		does		she		write		from?
Which state		does		she		write		from?

### EXCEPTION:

The prepositions *to* and *at* are not used with *where*.

### STATEMENTS:

*The letter is going to Chicago.*

*We are staying at the Forum Hotel.*

### QUESTIONS:

*Where is the letter going?*

*Where are you staying?*

## PRACTICE

**2-2. Write a question that is answered by the underlined word in each statement.**

1. She works in the furniture department.
2. He calls from his office.
3. No, he doesn't text me.
4. He sends email to his boss.
5. Yes, he drives through Washington state.
6. He drives through Washington state.
7. They talk about the garden.
8. They discuss it with their neighbors.
9. He goes to Europe every summer.
10. She makes cookies for her children.
11. He works at the airport.



12. He works at four o'clock.

## UNIT 3:

# Prepositions in Noun Clauses

A question word often connects statements containing the verbs *know*, *understand*, *wonder*, *ask*, and *tell* with a noun clause (subject + verb combination).

introduction	+	question word	+	noun clause
I know				
I don't know				
Do you know		who		he is(?)
I understand				
I wonder				
Ask him				
Tell us				

### Basic Patterns for Prepositions in Noun Clauses:

#### A. CLAUSES WITH *BE*

introduction + question word +		<i>noun clause</i>		
		subject +	verb	+ preposition
I know	who(m)	the letter	is	to.
I know	what	the letter	is	about.
I know	where	the letter	is	from.
I know	what state	the letter	is	from.
I know	which state	the letter	is	from.

#### B. CLAUSES WITH OTHER VERBS

<b>introduction</b>	+	<b>question word</b>	+	<i><b>noun clause</b></i>		
<hr/>						
		<b>subject</b>	+	<b>verb (object)</b>	+	<b>preposition</b>

I know	who(m)	she	writes letters	to.
I know	what	she	asks	for.
I know	where	she	writes	from.
I know	what state	she	writes	from.

## PRACTICE

### 3-1. Complete each answer:

1. Where is she from?

I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Who(m) is he talking to?

I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.

3. What does she write with?

I wonder \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Who do they live with?

I will ask them \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Who(m) is this letter for?

We know \_\_\_\_\_.

6. What does he do that for?

I don't understand \_\_\_\_\_.

7. What company does she work for?

She will tell me \_\_\_\_\_.

8. Which bus is she coming on?

I will ask her \_\_\_\_\_.

9. Who(m) does she write letters to?

I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.

10. Which courses are you registered for?

I don't understand \_\_\_\_\_.

## UNIT 4:

# Prepositions in Adjective Clauses

An **adjective clause** can identify a noun. The clause comes right after the noun.

### Basic Patterns for Prepositions in Adjective Clauses:

A. TO IDENTIFY A PERSON, AN ADJECTIVE CLAUSE CAN BEGIN WITH WHO(M), THAT, OR Ø:

person	+	introduction	+	adjective clause				
				subject	+	verb (object)	+	preposition
The man		who(m)		she		writes		to
The man		that		she		writes		to
The man				she		writes		to
The people		who(m)		we		live		with
The people		that		we		live		with
The people				we		live		with
The doctor		who(m)		I		ask		for
The doctor		that		I		ask		for
The doctor				I		ask		for

Make sure the adjective clause is right after the noun:

*The man who(m) she writes to* *is my father.*

*The people that we live with* *are nice.*

*The doctor I always ask for* *isn't here.*

*My father is* *the man who(m) she writes to.*

*I really like* *the people that we live with.*

*This is not* *the doctor I always ask for.*

B. TO IDENTIFY A THING, AN ADJECTIVE CLAUSE CAN BEGIN WITH THAT OR Ø.

thing	+	introduction	+	adjective clause
-------	---	--------------	---	------------------

---

		<b>subject</b>	+	<b>verb + (object)</b>	+	<b>preposition</b>
the book	that	I		paid ten dollars		for
the book		I		paid		for
the house	that	they		are looking		at
the house		they		are looking		at
the cities	that	we		work		in
the cities		we		work		in

Be sure to put the adjective clause directly after the noun.

<i>The book that I paid ten dollars for</i>	<i>is great.</i>
<i>The house they are looking at</i>	<i>is expensive.</i>
<i>The cities that we work in</i>	<i>are far apart.</i>
<i>I really like</i>	<i>the book I paid ten dollars for.</i>
<i>They might buy</i>	<i>the house they are looking at.</i>
<i>We love</i>	<i>the cities we work in.</i>

## PRACTICE

**4-1. Combine each set of sentences into one sentence by forming an adjective clause. Write your answers on a piece of paper.**

1. The man is my father. She writes letters to him.
2. The house is beautiful. My friends are looking at it.
3. Those are the children. My daughter plays with them.
4. The teacher isn't here. We talked to her yesterday.
5. The piano is fabulous. He paid a lot of money for it.
6. I am looking for the boy. I gave five dollars to him.
7. She likes the neighbor. She goes to the movies with him.
8. I lost the bag. I put my money in it.
9. I found the jacket. I took my keys out of it.
10. He can't remember the street. He parked on it.



## PART FOUR

# Phrasal Verbs

A **phrasal verb** is a verb followed by a preposition that narrows or changes the meaning of the verb. Learn the verb and the preposition together as one unit.

There are three types of phrasal verbs:

**nonseparable**

**separable**

**intransitive**

Each has its own set of word-order patterns.

## **How to Use Part Four**

1. Begin with Unit 1 and study the patterns described.
2. Read each example aloud.
3. Make up a new example sentence, write it down, and say it aloud.
4. Do the exercises, write your answers in your notebook, and check them with the key.
5. Keep doing the exercises until you have no mistakes.
6. Be sure to master each unit before proceeding to the next one.

# UNIT 1:

## Nonseparable Combinations

EXAMPLE:

**look for**

search

### Word Order

The object noun or pronoun immediately follows the preposition.

STATEMENT PATTERN

subject	+	verb-preposition	+	noun or pronoun
She		is looking for		John.
She		is looking for		him.

Incorrect:

~~She looks John for.~~  
~~She looks him for.~~

**Question Pattern 1** Use with *what*, *which*, *who(m)*, and *whose*.

question word	+	auxiliary verb	+	subject	+	verb	+	preposition?
What		are		you		looking		for?
Which book		were		you		looking		for?
Who(m)		are		you		looking		for?
Whose book		did		you		look		for?

**Question Pattern 2** Use with *why*, *when*, and *how*.

question word	+	auxiliary verb	+	subject	+	verb-preposition	+	noun or pronoun
Why		are		you		looking for		John?
When		did		you		look for		him?





The book	that	he	was looking	for	is on the table.
-------------	------	----	----------------	-----	---------------------

**Pattern 2**

subject + verb + object +			<i>adjective clause</i>			
			who(m) + subject +	verb	+ preposition	
			that ø			
I	see	the man	who(m)	you	are looking	for.
We	found	the book	that	you	were looking	for.

#### EXAMPLES OF NONSEPARABLE COMBINATIONS:

<b>act like</b>	behave in the same way as <i>She <b>acts like</b> her sister. She <b>acts like</b> her.</i>
<b>ask for</b>	request <i>They <b>asked for</b> information. They <b>asked for</b> it.</i>
<b>beg off</b>	make an excuse not to attend or participate <i>He <b>begged off</b> going to the party. He <b>begged off</b> going.</i>
<b>break into</b>	enter forcefully <i>Someone <b>broke into</b> the building. Someone <b>broke into</b> it.</i>
<b>call on</b>	ask one member of a group <i>The teacher <b>called on</b> Tom. She <b>called on</b> him.</i>
<b>care about</b>	have affection for <i>I <b>care about</b> my friends. I <b>care about</b> them.</i>
<b>care for</b>	have affection for <i>She <b>cares for</b> her roommates. She <b>cares for</b> them.</i> like or desire something <i>Do you <b>care for</b> more potatoes? (Do you want more?) No, I don't <b>care for</b> more. (No, I don't want any more.) No, I don't <b>care for</b> them. (No, I don't like them.)</i>
<b>check into</b>	register

They **checked into** the hotel. They **checked into** it.  
investigate

The police **checked into** the situation. They **checked into** it.

**come across**

find by accident

*I **came across** these photos when I was cleaning out the closet.*

*I **came across** them.*

**come after**

pursue in a negative way

*He **came after** my brother with a knife!*

*He **came after** him with a knife.*

**count on**

expect someone to support you

*She **counts on** her mother for everything. She **counts on** her.*

**fall for**

fall in love with

*She **fell for** the new employee. She **fell for** him.*

be tricked

*Don't **fall for** that old line! Don't **fall for** it.*

**get in**

enter a vehicle that you cannot walk around in.

***Get in** the car. **Get in** it.*

**get off**

remove one's self from a vehicle that you can walk around in; a personal vehicle; an animal that you can ride; a higher position

***Get off** the bus/bicycle/horse/ladder. **Get off** it.*

**get on**

enter a vehicle that you can walk around in; a personal vehicle; an animal that you can ride

*Now you can **get on** the bus. **Get on** it!*

**get over**

recover from

*It took him a long time to **get over** the tragedy.*

*It took him a long time to **get over** it.*

**get with**

cooperate

***Get with** the program! You have to **get with** it!*

<b>go for</b>	really like <i>She really <b>goes for</b> tennis players. She really <b>goes for</b> them.</i>
<b>go over</b>	review <i>Can you <b>go over</b> the lesson with me? Can you <b>go over</b> it with me?</i>
<b>go through</b>	have a careful look at <i><b>Go through</b> your papers and look for the document. Please <b>go through</b> them and look for it.</i> experience a special period of time <i>He's <b>going through</b> a crisis. He's <b>going through</b> it.</i>
<b>go with</b>	match; coordinate <i>This blouse doesn't <b>go with</b> my skirt. This blouse doesn't <b>go with</b> it.</i> accompany; date <i>Are you <b>going with</b> John? Are you <b>going with</b> him?</i>
<b>hear from</b>	have news of <i>We <b>heard from</b> Mary yesterday. We <b>heard from</b> her.</i>
<b>hear of</b>	know about <i>I've never <b>heard of</b> that movie. I've never <b>heard of</b> it.</i>
<b>keep at</b>	continue to pursue something <i><b>Keep at</b> the job. <b>Keep at</b> it.</i>
<b>keep off</b>	stay away from <i><b>Keep off</b> the grass. You're supposed to <b>keep off</b> it.</i>
<b>look after</b>	take care of <i>She'll <b>look after</b> their dog. She'll <b>look after</b> it.</i>
<b>look at</b>	put one's eyes on <i><b>Look at</b> this ad! <b>Look at</b> it!</i>
<b>look for</b>	try to find <i>Will you help me <b>look for</b> my cat? Help me <b>look for</b> it!</i>

<b>look into</b>	investigate <i>The police are <b>looking into</b> the case. They're <b>looking into</b> it.</i>
<b>look through</b>	try to find among other things <i>She <b>looked through</b> her papers, but couldn't find the photo. She <b>looked through</b> them, but couldn't find it.</i>
<b>pick at</b>	agitate with one's fingernails <i>Don't <b>pick at</b> that scab! Stop picking at it!</i>
<b>pick on</b>	abuse a member of a group <i>The teacher <b>picks on</b> Amy. She picks on her.</i>
<b>run across</b>	find by accident <i>I <b>ran across</b> this chair at a flea market. I <b>ran across</b> it.</i>
<b>run for</b>	be a candidate for office <i>Is he <b>running for</b> treasurer? Is he <b>running for</b> it?</i>
<b>run into</b>	meet someone by accident <i>I <b>ran into</b> Jim at the mall. I <b>ran into</b> him.</i>
<b>run over</b>	trample with a vehicle <i>That car <b>ran over</b> a squirrel. That car <b>ran over</b> it.</i>
<b>see through</b>	detect someone's true motives <i>It's easy to <b>see through</b> Jane. It's easy to <b>see through</b> her.</i>
<b>see to</b>	take responsibility for <i>The committee will <b>see to</b> the party preparations. The committee will <b>see to</b> them.</i>
<b>show through</b>	be transparent <i>His undershirt <b>shows through</b> his dress shirt. His undershirt <b>shows through</b> it.</i>
<b>stand by</b>	support <i>A loyal person <b>stands by</b> his friends. He <b>stands by</b> them.</i>

<b>stand for</b>	represent <i>That party <b>stands for</b> big changes. That party <b>stands for</b> them.</i>
	tolerate <i>The teacher won't <b>stand for</b> cheating. He won't <b>stand for</b> it.</i>
<b>take after</b>	be like <i>He sure <b>takes after</b> his father! He sure <b>takes after</b> him!</i>

## PRACTICE

### 1-1. Rewrite each sentence, changing the noun object to a pronoun:

1. We asked for *the information*.
2. She is going to call on *Mary and Carolyn* next week.
3. They just got on *the bus to Chicago*.
4. I came across *some old family pictures*.
5. The policeman is coming after *you and Jessica*.
6. She ran into *some old friends* at the mall.
7. I am going to stand by *my friend*.
8. He just went through *all his papers*.
9. We are looking for *Jason's wallet*.
10. That boy takes after *his father*.

### 1-2. Write a question for each of the sentences in the previous exercise.

Example:

1. What did you ask for?
2. Who(m) \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Which bus \_\_\_\_\_?
4. What \_\_\_\_\_?
5. Who(m) \_\_\_\_\_?
6. Who(m) \_\_\_\_\_?
7. Who(m) \_\_\_\_\_?

8. What \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
9. Whose \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
10. Who(m) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**1-3. Use the phrasal verb and tense indicated to complete each sentence:**

1. I don't know what you \_\_\_\_\_.  
(look for, present progressive)  
2. He asked me what I \_\_\_\_\_.  
(go through, past progressive)  
3. She didn't tell us which hotel she \_\_\_\_\_.  
(check into, past perfect)  
4. I want to know who(m) he \_\_\_\_\_.  
(care about, present)  
5. I wonder what office she \_\_\_\_\_.  
(run for, present progressive)

**1-4. Complete each sentence using an adjective clause:**

1. He was looking for a book.  
This is the book \_\_\_\_\_.  
2. Somebody broke into a house on this street.  
Is that the house \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
3. She hopes to hear from that company soon.  
What is the name of the company \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
4. The teacher picks on that group of students.  
That is the group of students \_\_\_\_\_.  
5. I have never heard of that place.  
That is a place \_\_\_\_\_.

## UNIT 2:

# Must-Be-Separated Combinations

Certain verb-preposition combinations **must** be separated.

### EXAMPLES:

<b>call back</b>	return a telephone call
<b>get off</b>	remove

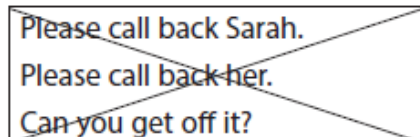
### Word Order

A **noun** or **pronoun** object comes between the verb and the preposition.

*Please call **Sarah** back. Please call **her** back.*

*Can you get **the wallpaper** off? Can you get **it** off?*

Incorrect:



### EXAMPLES OF MUST-BE SEPARATED COMBINATIONS:

<b>ask out</b>	invite
<i>He <b>asked</b> Sally <b>out</b>. He <b>asked</b> her <b>out</b>.</i>	

<b>call back</b>	return a call
<i><b>Call</b> Susan <b>back</b>. <b>Call</b> her <b>back</b>.</i>	

<b>do over</b>	repeat a task
<i>He <b>did</b> his project <b>over</b>. He <b>did</b> it <b>over</b>.</i>	

<b>drop by</b>	deliver
<i>He <b>dropped</b> this note <b>by</b>. He <b>dropped</b> it <b>by</b>.</i>	

<b>drop in</b>	place something in a receptacle
----------------	---------------------------------



Just **drop** the letter **in**. Just **drop** it **in**.

**get off**

remove

Can you **get** this wallpaper **off**? Can you **get** it **off**?

**have over**

invite to one's home

Let's **have** the Smiths **over**. Let's **have** them **over**.

**kick around**

treat unfairly

He **kicked** the little kids **around**. He **kicked** them **around**.

**kick out**

force to leave

They **kicked** Anne **out** of the group. They **kicked** her **out**.

**let down**

disappoint

She **let** the whole team **down**. She **let** us **down**.

**name after**

give the same name as

We **named** the baby **after** Paul. We **named** him **after** Paul.

**pass over**

not promote on schedule

They **passed** Bill **over**. They **passed** him **over**.

**show around**

give a tour

We'll **show** your guests **around**. We'll **show** them **around**.

**stand up**

fail to appear for a date

She changed her mind, and **stood** the man **up**. She **stood** him **up**.

**start over**

begin something again

It's not good: **start** the scene **over**. **Start** it **over**.

**turn around**

change the direction of

**Turn** the rug **around** and it will fit. **Turn** it **around**.

**turn down**

refuse a proposal

The editor **turned** her book **down**. He **turned** it **down**.

**turn off**

become unattractive to

*She **turned** Sam **off** when she acted so silly. She **turned** him **off**.*

**wear out**

exhaust someone

*That exercise **wore** Tim **out**. It **wore** him **out**.*

## **PRACTICE**

### **2-1. Express each of the following using a separated phrasal verb:**

1. Pedro called me and I returned his call.
2. Patricia repeated the test in order to get a better grade on it.
3. We invited André to our house.
4. He disappointed his teacher.
5. My father's name is Connor. They named the baby Connor.
6. The teacher told Angela to leave the classroom immediately.
7. He said 'no' to Soo's invitation.
8. Jessica and I were really tired after the long swim.
9. The guide gave Jason and his family a tour of the campus.
10. They didn't promote Olivia.

### **2-2. Make a question for each "answer" in 2-1.**

EXAMPLE: "She stood me up." Did she stand you up?

## UNIT 3:

# Separable Combinations

### EXAMPLES:

<b>cross out</b>	something <i>delete something by marking it</i>
<b>look up</b>	somebody <i>try to find information about somebody</i>

### Word Order

A **noun** object may follow the preposition.

*He crossed out **the mistake**.*

*She looked up **her old friend**.*

A **noun** object may precede the preposition.

*He crossed **the mistake** out.*

*She looked **her old friend** up.*

A **pronoun** object may precede, but not follow, the preposition.

*He crossed **it** out.*

*She looked **him** up.*

Incorrect:

~~He crossed out it.~~

### Question Pattern 1

question word	+	auxiliary verb	+	subject	+	verb	+	preposition	+	noun object?
Why		did		he		cross		out		the mistake?
Why		did		she		look		up		her friend?

## Question Pattern 2

question word	+ auxiliary verb	+ subject	+ verb	+ object	+ preposition?
Why	did	he	cross	the mistake	out?
Why	did	he	cross	it	out?
Why	did	she	look	her old friend	up?
Why	did	she	look	him	up?

### NOUN CLAUSES

**Pattern 1** Use with *why*, *when*, *how*, and *where*

introduction	+ question word	+ <i>noun clause</i>
		subject + verb + preposition + noun object
I don't know	why	he crossed out the mistake.
I don't know	when	he crossed out the mistake.
I don't know	how	she looked up her friend.
I don't know	where	she looked up her friend.

Incorrect:

~~I don't know why he crossed out it.~~  
~~I don't know how he looked up her.~~

**Pattern 2** Use with *why*, *when*, *how*, and *where*

introduction	+ question word	+ subject	+ verb	+ object	+ preposition
I don't know	why	he	crossed	the mistake	out.
I don't know	when	he	crossed	it	out.
I don't know	how	she	looked	her friend	up.
I don't know	where	she	looked	him	up.

**Pattern 3** Use with *what, which, who(m), and whose*

**introduction + question word + object + subject + verb + preposition**

I don't know	what		he	crossed	out.
I don't know	what	mistake	he	crossed	out.
I don't know	which	mistake	he	crossed	out.
I don't know	whom		she	looked	up.
I don't know	whose	name	she	looked	up.

**ADJECTIVE CLAUSES**

**Pattern**

**subject + verb + object + adjective clause**

			that who(m) ø	+ subject +	verb +	preposition
This	is	the	that	he	crossed	out.
		mistake				
This	is	the		he	crossed	out.
		mistake				
He	is	the	whom	she	looked	up.
		friend				
He	is	the		she	looked	up.
		friend				

**EXAMPLES OF SEPARABLE COMBINATIONS:**

**back up** move a vehicle in reverse  
***Back** the car **up**. You need to **back** the car **up**. **Back** it **up**.*

**blow down** destroy by wind  
*The wind **blew down** the barn. The wind **blew** the barn **down**. The wind **blew** it **down**.*

**blow out** extinguish with the force of one's breath  
*The child **blew out** all the candles. The child **blew** all the candles **out**. She **blew** them all **out**.*

<b>blow up</b>	cause to expand with the force of one's breath <i>He <b>blew up</b> the balloons. He <b>blew</b> the balloons <b>up</b>. He <b>blew</b> them <b>up</b>.</i>
<b>break down</b>	destroy <i>They <b>broke</b> the door <b>down</b> to get in. They <b>broke down</b> the door.</i> <i>They <b>broke</b> it <b>down</b>.</i>
<b>break in</b>	use equipment for the first time <i>We <b>broke in</b> the new lawnmower. We <b>broke</b> the lawnmower <b>in</b>.</i> <i>We <b>broke</b> it <b>in</b>.</i>
<b>break up</b>	end a meeting or party <i>The police <b>broke up</b> the party. They <b>broke</b> the party <b>up</b>.</i> <i>They <b>broke</b> it <b>up</b>.</i>
<b>bring back</b>	return something <i><b>Bring back</b> my book. <b>Bring</b> my book <b>back</b>. <b>Bring</b> it <b>back</b>.</i>
<b>bring on</b>	invite a challenge <i>The officer said to <b>bring on</b> the enemies. He said to <b>bring</b> the enemies <b>on</b>. He said to <b>bring</b> them <b>on</b>.</i>
<b>bring up</b>	introduce a topic for discussion <i>Don't <b>bring up</b> this idea at the meeting. Don't <b>bring</b> this idea <b>up</b>.</i> <i>Please don't <b>bring</b> it <b>up</b>.</i>
<b>call off</b>	cancel <i>She <b>called off</b> the wedding. She <b>called</b> the wedding <b>off</b>. She decided to <b>call</b> it <b>off</b>.</i>
<b>call up</b>	telephone <i><b>Call up</b> your friends! <b>Call</b> your friends <b>up</b>! <b>Call</b> them <b>up</b>!</i>
<b>carry out</b>	remove something heavy

***Carry out** the sofa. Please **carry** the sofa **out**. Please **carry** it **out**.*

**check off** remove from a list, indicating that it is no longer relevant  
*She **checked off** two tasks this morning. She **checked** two tasks **off**. She **checked** them **off**.*

**check out** verify information  
*He **checked out** that information. He's **checking** that information **out**.  
He's **checking** it **out**.*

**cheer up** put someone in better spirits  
*Let's go **cheer up** your mother. Let's go **cheer** your mother **up**.  
Let's go **cheer** her **up**.*

**chew out** scold strongly  
*The coach **chewed out** the whole team. He **chewed** the whole team **out**.  
He really **chewed** them **out**.*

**clean up** put back in order  
*We'll **clean up** the room after the party. We'll **clean** the room **up**.  
We'll **clean** it **up**.*

**cross out** delete  
*She **crossed out** all my mistakes. She **crossed** all my mistakes **out**.  
She **crossed** (all of) them **out**.*

**cut down** remove something tall with a saw or axe  
*They **cut down** the tree. They **cut** the tree **down**. They **cut** it **down**.*

**cut out** remove with scissors or a knife  
*I **cut out** your article. I **cut** your article **out**. I **cut** it **out**.*

**draw up** make a design on paper

The architect **drew up** the plans. She **drew** the plans **up**. She **drew** them **up**.

**drop off**

deliver

She **dropped off** this package. She **dropped** this package **off**.  
She **dropped** it **off**.

**figure out**

understand

I can't **figure out** this problem. I can't **figure** the problem **out**.

I can't **figure** it **out**.

**fill in**

write information on a blank space

**Fill in** the blanks. **Fill** the blanks **in**. **Fill** them **in**.

**fill out**

fill in information on a form

**Fill out** the form. **Fill** the form **out**. **Fill** it **out**.

**fill up**

add to capacity

**Fill up** the gas tank. **Fill** the gas tank **up**. **Fill** it **up**.

**get across**

make someone understand

She **got across** the main idea. She **got** the main idea **across**.  
She **got** it **across**.

**get back**

receive in return

You'll **get back** the money. You'll **get** the money **back**. You'll **get** it **back**.

**get out**

remove

They **got out** the stain. They **got** the stain **out**. They **got** it **out**.

**give back**

return something

We have to **give back** the tickets. We have to **give** the tickets **back**.

We have to **give** them **back**.

**give out**

distribute



*She **gave out** pencils. She **gave** pencils **out**. She **gave** them **out**.*

**hand in** give to a teacher or boss  
*We had to **hand in** our work. We had to **hand** our work **in**.  
We had to **hand** it **in**.*

**hand out** distribute to a group  
*He's **handing out** the exams now. He's **handing** the exams **out** now.  
He's **handing** them **out**.*

**hand over** give under force  
*She **handed over** the gun. She **handed** the gun **over**.  
She **handed** it **over**.*

**hang up** suspend from a hook or hanger  
*Please **hang up** your clothes. Please **hang** your clothes **up**.  
Please **hang** them **up**.*

**have on** be wearing  
*He **has on** a blue shirt. He **has** a blue shirt **on**. He **has** it **on**.*

**hold up** keep high  
*Sue **held up** her hand. Sue **held** her hand **up**. She **held** it **up**.*  
rob  
*Two men **held up** the bus. Two men **held** the bus **up**. They **held** us **up**.*

**knock out** hit until unconscious  
*The boxer **knocked out** two others. He **knocked** two others **out**.  
He **knocked** them **out**.*

**leave out** omit  
*You **left out** David. You **left** David **out**. You **left** him **out**.*

**look over** review carefully

*He **looked over** her work. He **looked** her work **over**. He **looked it over**.*

**look up**

look in a book for information

*I'll **look up** her address in the phone book. I'll **look** her address **up**.*

*I'll **look it up**.*

**make up**

invent

*She **made up** the story. She **made** the story **up**. She **made it up**.*

**mark down**

lower the price

*She **marked down** the dresses. She **marked** the dresses **down**.*

*She **marked them down**.*

**pass in**

submit homework, as a group

*The students **passed in** their homework. The students **passed** their homework **in**. They **passed it in**.*

**pass on**

spread news to others

*We **passed** the good news **on**. We **passed it on**.*

**pass out**

distribute to a group

*The teacher **passed out** the test. The teacher **passed** the test **out**.*

*He **passed it out**.*

**pass up**

not accept an opportunity

*You **passed up** the chance to study in Europe. You **passed** the chance **up**.*

*You **passed it up**.*

**pay back**

return a loan

*You can **pay back** the money in ten years. You can **pay** the money **back** in ten years. You can **pay it back** in ten years.*

**pick out**

choose

*She **picked out** a red dress. She **picked** a red dress **out**. She **picked it out**.*

**pick up**

collect

***Pick up** the box. **Pick** the box **up**. **Pick it up**.*

**put back**

return something to its place

*She **put back** the candy. She **put** the candy **back**. She **put it back**.*

**put down**

stop holding

***Put down** the boxes. **Put** the boxes **down** over here. **Put them down** here.*

**put off**

postpone

*She **put off** the party. She **put** the party **off**. She **put it off**.*

**put on**

begin wearing

*He **put on** a sweater. He **put** a sweater **on**. He **put it on**.*

**round off**

estimate the closest whole number

*He **rounded off** \$39.95 to \$40. He **rounded** \$39.95 **off** to \$40.*

*He **rounded it off** to \$40.*

**set up**

arrange

*I **set up** the appointment. I **set** the appointment **up**. I **set it up**.*

**show up**

perform better than someone else

*They were so good, they **showed up** the other teams. They **showed** the other teams **up**. They **showed us up**.*

**take back**

repossess

*Did he **take back** the ring? Did he **take** the ring **back**? He **took it back**.*

return to a store

*She **took back** the shoes. She **took** the shoes **back**. She **took them back**.*

<b>take down</b>	<p>disassemble</p> <p><i>They <b>took down</b> the stage. They <b>took</b> the stage <b>down</b>.</i></p> <p><i>They <b>took it down</b>.</i></p> <p>remove from a higher place</p> <p><i>I <b>took down</b> the curtain. I <b>took</b> the curtain <b>down</b>. I <b>took it down</b>.</i></p>
<b>take off</b>	<p>remove clothing</p> <p><i>They <b>took off</b> their shoes. They <b>took</b> their shoes <b>off</b>.</i></p> <p><i>They <b>took them off</b>.</i></p>
<b>take on</b>	<p>hire</p> <p><i>They <b>took on</b> two new teachers. They <b>took</b> two teachers <b>on</b>.</i></p> <p><i>They <b>took them on</b>.</i></p>
<b>take out</b>	<p>remove</p> <p><i>He <b>took out</b> the rugs. He <b>took</b> the rugs <b>out</b>. He <b>took them out</b>.</i></p>
<b>take up</b>	<p>shorten a garment</p> <p><i>I <b>took up</b> the hem. I <b>took</b> the hem <b>up</b>. I <b>took it up</b>.</i></p>
<b>tear down</b>	<p>demolish</p> <p><i>They <b>tore down</b> our building. They <b>tore</b> our building <b>down</b>.</i></p> <p><i>They <b>tore it down</b>.</i></p>
<b>tear off</b>	<p>remove paper or cloth quickly</p> <p><i>He <b>tore off</b> the wrapper. He <b>tore</b> the wrapper <b>off</b>. He <b>tore it off</b>.</i></p>
<b>tear out</b>	<p>remove from a book/notebook/magazine/etc.</p> <p><i>Please don't <b>tear out</b> the pages. Please don't <b>tear</b> the pages <b>out</b>.</i></p> <p><i>Please don't <b>tear them out</b>.</i></p>
<b>tear up</b>	<p>destroy by tearing</p> <p><i>She <b>tore up</b> the letter. She <b>tore</b> the letter <b>up</b>. She <b>tore it up</b>.</i></p>

<b>think over</b>	consider an option <i>We'll <b>think over</b> your suggestion. We'll <b>think</b> your suggestion <b>over</b>. We'll <b>think</b> it <b>over</b>.</i>
<b>throw out</b>	put in the trash <i>I <b>threw out</b> your old sneakers. I <b>threw</b> your sneakers <b>out</b>. I <b>threw</b> them <b>out</b>.</i>
<b>try on</b>	test for fit <i><b>Try on</b> these shoes. <b>Try</b> these shoes <b>on</b>. <b>Try</b> them <b>on</b>.</i>
<b>try out</b>	test a piece of equipment <i><b>Try out</b> my laptop to see if you like it. <b>Try</b> my laptop <b>out</b>. <b>Try</b> it <b>out</b>.</i>
<b>turn in</b>	submit work <i>We have to <b>turn in</b> the essay by tomorrow. We have to <b>turn</b> the essay <b>in</b> by tomorrow. We have to <b>turn</b> it <b>in</b>.</i>
<b>turn off</b>	stop from operating <i><b>Turn off</b> the lights. <b>Turn</b> the lights <b>off</b>. <b>Turn</b> them <b>off</b>.</i>
<b>turn on</b>	begin operating <i>He <b>turns on</b> the TV. He <b>turns</b> the TV <b>on</b>. He <b>turns</b> it <b>on</b>.</i>
<b>turn over</b>	put the other side up <i>She <b>turned over</b> the glasses. She <b>turned</b> the glasses <b>over</b>. She <b>turned</b> them <b>over</b>.</i>
<b>turn up</b>	increase the volume <i><b>Turn up</b> the music! <b>Turn</b> the music <b>up</b>! <b>Turn</b> it <b>up</b>!</i>
<b>wake up</b>	stop from sleeping <i>Don't <b>wake up</b> the baby. Don't <b>wake</b> the baby <b>up</b>. Don't <b>wake</b> her <b>up</b>.</i>
<b>wash out</b>	remove with water <i>I can <b>wash out</b> the spot. I can <b>wash</b> the spot <b>out</b>. I can <b>wash</b> it <b>out</b>.</i>

<b>wear out</b>	use until it is no good <i>They <b>wore out</b> the carpet. They <b>wore</b> the carpet <b>out</b>. They <b>wore</b> it <b>out</b>.</i>
<b>work out</b>	solve a problem through effort <i>We can <b>work out</b> our problems. We can <b>work</b> the problems <b>out</b>. We'll <b>work</b> them <b>out</b>.</i>
<b>wrap up</b>	cover with paper <i>Shall I <b>wrap up</b> the package? Shall I <b>wrap</b> the package <b>up</b>? Shall I <b>wrap</b> it <b>up</b>?</i>
<b>write down</b>	note on paper <i><b>Write down</b> my number. <b>Write</b> my number <b>down</b>. <b>Write</b> it <b>down</b>.</i>
<b>write up</b>	make a report on <i>She <b>wrote up</b> the wedding for the Star. She <b>wrote</b> the wedding <b>up</b>. She <b>wrote</b> it <b>up</b>.</i>

## PRACTICE

### 3-1. Rewrite each sentence, changing the underlined nouns to pronouns:

Example: The wind blew down two trees. *The wind blew them down.*

1. The teacher came in and broke up the party.
2. Don't bring up that subject.
3. Are you going to call off the wedding?
4. We will clean up the mess.
5. I have to fill out these forms.
6. She is trying to get the mud off her shoes.
7. Did you give back the money?
8. We looked up your sister in Pittsburgh.
9. He always mixes up the twins.

**3-2. Rewrite each sentence two ways, changing the pronouns to the nouns indicated:**

1. They looked it over. (the new house)  
They looked the new house over.  
They looked over the new house.
2. We are going to pass them in. (our papers)
3. He has to pay it back. (the money)
4. Did they kick her out? (Jennifer)
5. I hope she doesn't pass it up. (this opportunity)

## UNIT 4:

# Nonseparable Combinations with an Additional Preposition

With these combinations, the object noun or pronoun always goes after the verb.

### EXAMPLES:

<b>break up with</b>	end a relationship <i>He <b>broke up with</b> her last week.</i>
<b>check out of</b>	terminate a hotel stay <i>We <b>checked out of</b> the hotel. We <b>checked out of</b> it.</i>
<b>get out of</b>	obtain release from an obligation; to leave a vehicle <i>She <b>got out of</b> jury duty. She <b>got out of</b> it. We <b>got out of</b> the car. We <b>got out of</b> it.</i>
<b>be fed up with</b>	be out of patience with a person or situation <i>The teacher kicked him out of class. She was <b>fed up with</b> his behavior.</i>
<b>hang up on</b>	end a phone call abruptly, usually in anger <i>I <b>hung up on</b> Sarah. She said something that made me furious, so I <b>hung up on</b> her.</i>
<b>mix up with</b>	confuse <i>Their careers are so similar that people often <b>mix</b> Alexa <b>up with</b> Michael. People <b>mix</b> her <b>up with</b> him.</i>
<b>run out of</b>	use up the entire supply of <i>She went to the store because she <b>ran out of</b> milk. She <b>ran out of</b> it.</i>
<b>take out on</b>	punish someone for someone else's misdeed



*Eric had a tantrum in class, and the teacher **took** her frustration **out on** the whole class. She **took it out** on us.*

## **PRACTICE**

**4-1. Express each of the following with a nonseparable phrasal verb plus another preposition.**

1. She wants to leave the car.
2. He ended the phone call with me abruptly.
3. We are using up all the milk.
4. The teacher calls John “Jim” and Jim “John.”
5. He is mad at the boss, and is blaming me!
6. We need to leave the hotel officially.
7. I was released from lunch duty.
8. She is going to end her engagement to him.

## UNIT 5:

# Separable Combinations with an Additional Preposition

When another preposition is added to a separable combination, the object, noun, or pronoun always goes between the verb and the two prepositions.

**Pattern** verb + non/pronoun + preposition + preposition + noun

EXAMPLE:

**to take out of** to remove something from within

Statement:        *He took the money out of his back pocket.*  
                         *He took it out of his pocket.*

Question:        *What did he take the money out of?*  
                         *Which pocket did he take it out of?*

Noun Clause:    *I don't know which pocket he took the money out of.*  
                         *I don't know which pocket he took it out of.*

Adjective Clause: *This is the pocket (that) he took the money out of.*  
                         *This is the pocket he took it out of.*

EXAMPLE:

**to give back to** to return something to somebody

Statement:        *We gave the letter back to her.*  
                         *We gave it back to her.*

Question:        *Who(m) did you give the letter back to?*  
                         *Who(m) did you give it back to?*

Noun Clause:    *I don't know who(m) we gave the letter back to.*  
                         *I don't know who(m) we gave it back to.*

Adjective Clause: *She is the girl who(m) we gave **it** back to.*  
*She is the girl we gave **the letter** back to.*

**EXAMPLES OF SEPARABLE COMBINATIONS WITH AN ADDITIONAL PREPOSITION:**

<b>check out of</b>	borrow from a library <i><b>Check</b> that book <b>out</b> of the library. <b>Check</b> it <b>out</b>.</i>
<b>get back from</b>	have something returned <i>Did you <b>get</b> the book <b>back from</b> Kathy? Did you <b>get</b> it <b>back from</b> her?</i>
<b>give back to</b>	return to someone <i>He <b>gave</b> the papers <b>back to</b> Charles. He <b>gave</b> them <b>back to</b> him.</i>
<b>hand in to</b>	give to a teacher or boss <i><b>Hand</b> your work <b>in to</b> the teacher. <b>Hand</b> it <b>in to</b> the teacher.</i>
<b>hand out to</b>	give to each member of a group <i>She <b>handed</b> the exams <b>out to</b> the students. She <b>handed</b> them <b>out to</b> the students.</i>
<b>hand over to</b>	give to an authority <i>We had to <b>hand</b> the firecrackers <b>over to</b> the principal. We had to <b>hand</b> them <b>over to</b> the principal.</i>
<b>hang up on</b>	place on a hook or hanger <i>Can I <b>hang</b> my coat <b>up on</b> this rack? Can I <b>hang</b> it <b>up on</b> this rack?</i>
<b>mix up with</b>	use for combining <i>She <b>mixed</b> the ingredients <b>up with</b> a spoon. She <b>mixed</b> them <b>up with</b> a spoon.</i>
<b>run out of</b>	force to leave a place <i>Her dad <b>ran</b> everybody <b>out of</b> the house. He <b>ran</b> us <b>out of</b> the house.</i>
<b>take away from</b>	remove forcibly from someone

*Her parents **took** the keys **away from** her. They **took** them **away from** her.*

**take out of** remove from a container  
*She's **taking** the crayons **out of** the box. She's **taking** them **out of** the box.*

**tear out of** remove from a book or periodical  
*You mustn't **tear** pages **out of** the book. You mustn't **tear** them **out**.*

**wash out of** remove a spot with water  
*Try to **wash** the stain **out of** your skirt. Try to **wash** it **out of** your skirt.*

**write down on** note something on  
***Write** the address **down on** this card. **Write** it **down on** this card.*

## PRACTICE

**5-1. Change each statement into a yes/no question. Change the underlined nouns to pronouns.**

1. He brought the books up to the fourth floor.  
*Did he bring them up to the fourth floor?*
2. She is going to check some books out of the library.
3. He is trying to get the spot out of his shirt.
4. We got our clothes back from the dry cleaners.
5. He is going to hand his letter of resignation in to the manager tomorrow.
6. You should hang your coat up on the hanger.
7. She mixes the dough up with her fingers.
8. The police are going to run the ruffians out of town.
9. She takes the groceries out of the car herself.
10. I wrote your number down on a scrap of paper.

## UNIT 6:

# Intransitive Combinations

EXAMPLE:

**act up** misbehave

There is no object; the word following the verb is now an **adverb**.

### Statement Pattern

subject	+	verb	+	adverb
The child		acted		up

### Question Pattern

(question word)	+	auxiliary verb	+	subject	+	verb	+	adverb?
Why		did		the child		act		up?

### Noun Clause Pattern

introduction	+	question word	+	subject	+	verb	+	adverb
I don't know		why		the child		acted		up.

### Adjective Clause Pattern

subject	+	who that	+	verb	+	adverb	+	verb
The child		who		acted		up		is in the kitchen.

EXAMPLES OF INTRANSITIVE VERB + ADVERB COMBINATIONS:

**act out** misbehave  
*The kids **act out** more at the end of the year.*

**act up** misbehave  
*The kids always **act up** when their parents go out.*

**add up** make sense

*She's a good student, but she hates school. It doesn't **add up**.*

**back down**

weaken one's stance

*He fought hard, but **backed down** when he saw that it was impossible to convince us.*

**back off**

stop aggressive behavior

*She was yelling at the policeman, but **backed off** when he started to handcuff her.*

**blow away**

disappear in the wind

*The newspaper came, but it **blew away** in the storm.*

**blow out**

explode (a tire)

*When we were driving to Texas, the tire **blew out**.*

**blow over**

lose importance

*They had a big argument, but it **blew over**, and they're friends again.*

**blow up**

explode

*He didn't know it was a bomb, and it **blew up** in his hand.*

become angry

*When he heard what we did, the principal **blew up**.*

**break down**

show sorrow

*The girl **broke down** at her grandmother's funeral.*

**break out**

suddenly have spots or sores on one's body

*I heard you had the measles. When did you first **break out**?*

**break up**

end a relationship

*They seemed so happy together; it's too bad they **broke up**.*

**burn down**

be destroyed by fire (a building)

*We found out too late, and the barn **burned down**.*

**burn up**

be destroyed by fire (an object)

*All of our photos and books **burned up**.*

**butt in**

interrupt

*We were having a nice conversation until she **butted in**.*

**calm down**

tranquilize one's self

*She was upset, but she **calmed down** quickly.*

**carry on**

keep working

*Their leader got sick, but they **carried on** bravely.*

**catch on**

understand

*After doing the homework exercises, he finally **caught on**.*

**catch up**

attain the expected level

*She should go on the trip, but she'll have to **catch up** when she returns.*

**cheer up**

improve one's mood

*I sure wish you would **cheer up**.*

**chicken out**

become too afraid to participate

*She was supposed to do a parachute jump, but she **chickened out** at the last minute.*

**chip in**

add to a collection of money for a benefit

*We're collecting for the Red Cross. Can you **chip in**?*

**clam up**

refuse to talk

*When they started asking him questions, he **clammed up**.*

**close down**

stop business

*I loved that shop; too bad it **closed down**.*

**close up**

stop business for the day

*Please come back tomorrow; we're **closing up** now.*

**come about**

happen

*He got into big trouble; now, how did that **come about**?*

**come out**

declare one's homosexuality publicly

*She **came out** three years ago.*

**come through**

behave as everyone hopes

*He didn't want to help, but in the end he **came through**.*

**come to** regain consciousness  
*She fainted, but **came to** a few seconds later.*

**crack down** become stricter  
*The students acted out so often that the principal decided to **crack down**.*

**crop up** appear unexpectedly (an obstacle)  
*Some problems have **cropped up** recently.*

**cut back** reduce spending  
*Because of the slow economy, most people have to **cut back**.*

**drag on** continue for too long  
*The dull show **dragged on** until eleven o'clock.*

**drop by** visit unexpectedly  
*My friends **dropped by**, and I was still in pajamas.*

**drop in** visit unexpectedly  
*Come see us. Just **drop in** any time.*

**drop off** fall asleep  
*He always **drops off** while watching TV.*

**drop out** stop going to school  
*It's too bad he **dropped out**; now he'll have trouble getting a good job.*

**eat out** eat at a restaurant  
*More people **eat out** than ever before.*

**fall down** collapse  
*My mother **fell down** and broke her hip.*

**fall over** hit the ground  
*The tall trees **fell over** during the storm.*

**fall through** fail to occur



*Our vacation plans **fell through** at the last minute.*

**get along** not fight  
*Do you **get along** with your roommate?*

**get around** be active  
*My dad just got back from Europe; he really **gets around**.*

**get by** barely manage to survive  
*She has little money, but she **gets by**.*

**get through** finish  
*When are you going to **get through**?*

**get up** leave bed  
*What time do you **get up**?*

**give in** surrender  
*When she saw the gun, she **gave in** and turned over the money.*

**give up** stopped trying  
*After years of trying to save her marriage, she **gave up**.*

**go by** pass  
*Time seems to **go by** faster when you're having fun.*

**go on** happen  
*What's **going on** in the basement? I hear a lot of noise.*

**go out** stop functioning  
*The lights **went out** last night during the storm.*

**goof off** waste time  
*You're supposed to be working. Stop **goofing off**!*

**grow up** become an adult  
*You are so silly. Sometimes I think you'll never **grow up**.*

**hang around** not leave  
*We told them to go home, but they keep **hanging around**.*

<b>hang out</b>	spend leisure time <i>Where does he <b>hang out</b> in the evening?</i>
<b>keep out</b>	not enter <i>The building is condemned. You must <b>keep out</b>.</i>
<b>live on</b>	not die <i>She was a great influence, and her spirit will <b>live on</b>.</i>
<b>look out</b>	take notice <i><b>Look out</b> ! There's a car coming!</i>
<b>luck out</b>	be fortunate <i>There were no more tickets, but I <b>lucked out</b> and got one from a stranger.</i>
<b>make out</b>	manage <i>How did you <b>make out</b>? Did the interview go well?</i>
<b>make up</b>	return to a relationship <i>They broke up last week, but now have <b>made up</b>.</i>
<b>nod off</b>	fall asleep <i>She always <b>nods off</b> in class.</i>
<b>pan out (not)</b>	end unsuccessfully <i>Their new business didn't <b>pan out</b>, and they need jobs.</i>
<b>pass away</b>	die <i>His father <b>passed away</b> last year.</i>
<b>pass out</b>	lose consciousness <i>She was dancing, and all of a sudden <b>passed out</b>.</i>
<b>pull over</b>	move a car off the road <i>The policeman told him to <b>pull over</b>.</i>
<b>run around</b>	party a lot <i>He used to be responsible, but now he just <b>runs around</b>.</i>

<b>show up</b>	surprisingly appear <i>Even the teachers <b>showed up</b> at the rally.</i>
<b>slip up</b>	make a mistake <i>The error is my fault. I <b>slipped up</b>.</i>
<b>stand by</b>	not leave <i>The flight has been canceled. <b>Stand by</b> for more information.</i>
<b>stand out</b>	be emphasized <i>The bold printing makes the message <b>stand out</b>.</i>
<b>stand up</b>	get to one's feet <i>If you want to volunteer, please <b>stand up</b>.</i>
<b>take off</b>	begin to fly <i>What time does the plane <b>take off</b>?</i>
<b>take over</b>	assume control <i>What will we do if that political party <b>takes over</b>?</i>
<b>throw up</b>	vomit <i>The woman was so upset that she <b>threw up</b>.</i>
<b>turn in</b>	go to bed <i>He came home exhausted, and <b>turned in</b> early.</i>
<b>turn out</b>	finish <i>The party <b>turned out</b> well, thanks to your help.</i>
<b>turn up</b>	appear, uninvited <i>A lot of people we didn't know <b>turned up</b> at the party.</i>
<b>wake up</b>	stop sleeping <i><b>Wake up</b> ! You're late for school!</i>
<b>watch out</b>	take notice; be careful <i>He'll get into trouble if he doesn't <b>watch out</b>.</i>

**work out**

end successfully

*I sure hope your new job **works out**.*

exercise

*She's in great shape. You can tell that she **works out**.*

## PRACTICE

**6-1. Rewrite each sentence, using an intransitive verb-adverb combination in place of the underlined verb.**

1. The children misbehaved.  
*The children acted up.*
2. I hope the boss doesn't lose his temper because we are late.
3. I'm so glad you came to visit.
4. Please try to be still and quiet.
5. Do you think they will understand the rules quickly?
6. What time did you fall asleep?
7. It is important to become mature.
8. Those kids act silly and do nothing all day.
9. He fainted in class.
10. We passed the exam; we were very fortunate.

## UNIT 7:

# Intransitive Verb-Adverb Combinations Followed by a Preposition

### EXAMPLE 1:

**to get along** with to live in harmony with

Statement:            *She **gets along with** her roommates.*  
                              *She **gets along with** them.*

Question:            *Who(m) does she **get along with**?*

Noun Clause:        *It doesn't matter who(m) she **gets along with**.*

Adjective Clause:   *Those are the roommates [who(m)] she **gets along with**.*

### EXAMPLE 2:

**to get through** with to finish something that requires effort

Statement:            *They have **to get through** with their exams.*  
                              *They have **to get through** with them.*

Question:            *What do they have **to get through** with?*

Noun Clause:        *I don't care what they have **to get through** with.*

Adjective Clause:   *These are the exams (that) they have **to get through** with.*

### EXAMPLES OF VERB-ADVERB-PREPOSITION COMBINATIONS:

**add up to**            total  
                              *The bill **adds up to** \$366.*

**be up for**            be in the mood to  
                              *Are you **up for** a movie tonight?*

<b>bone up on</b>	research or study <i>You should <b>bone up on</b> politics before the meeting.</i>
<b>brush up on</b>	review <i>She's <b>brushing up on</b> European history before her trip.</i>
<b>catch up with</b>	attain the same level as <i>I'm sure he'll <b>catch up with</b> the others soon.</i>
<b>close in on</b>	entrap <i>The police <b>closed in on</b> the gang and handcuffed them all.</i>
<b>come down with</b>	become sick with <i>The kids <b>came down with</b> colds.</i>
<b>crack down on</b>	become stricter with <i>They're <b>cracking down on</b> illegal immigration.</i>
<b>cut back on</b>	use less of <i>She had to <b>cut back on</b> sugar.</i>
<b>drop in on</b>	visit unexpectedly <i>My old high school friend <b>dropped in on</b> me last night.</i>
<b>drop out of</b>	stop attending school <i>Her boyfriend <b>dropped out of</b> college.</i>
<b>face up to</b>	confront <i>You're going to have to <b>face up to</b> reality and accept that your children have moved to their own places.</i>
<b>fall in with</b>	become involved with <i>He <b>fell in with</b> a rough crowd.</i>
<b>feel up to</b>	be well enough to <i>Do you <b>feel up to</b> a walk in the park?</i>
<b>fill in for</b>	substitute for <i>I have another commitment. Can you <b>fill in for</b> me?</i>

<b>find out about</b>	learn information <i>How did you <b>find out about</b> her new boyfriend?</i>
<b>get ahead of</b>	overtake <i>If you don't study, the others will <b>get ahead of</b> you.</i>
<b>get around to</b>	finally do <i>When are you going to <b>get around to</b> fixing the faucet?</i>
<b>get away from</b>	separate one's self from <i>You have to <b>get away from</b> here.</i>
<b>get away with</b>	misbehave and not be found out <i>They cheated on the exam and <b>got away with</b> it.</i>
<b>get out of</b>	be released from an obligation <i>How did you <b>get out of</b> washing the dishes?</i>
<b>get through with</b>	finish a difficult experience <i>When does he <b>get through with</b> chemotherapy?</i>
<b>give up on</b>	no longer have hope for <i>He let her down so many times that she finally <b>gave up on</b> him.</i>
<b>go in for</b>	be interested in <i>Do you <b>go in for</b> motorcycles?</i>
<b>go out for</b>	audition for a team <i>He's <b>going out for</b> the football team; I hope he makes it.</i>
<b>go out with</b>	date <i>She's <b>going out with</b> Paul on Saturday night.</i>
<b>go through with</b>	endure an event, even with second thoughts <i>Divorce is a big step. Are you really going to <b>go through with</b> it?</i>
<b>hang out with</b>	spend leisure time with <i>Who are you <b>hanging out with</b> these days?</i>

<b>keep away from</b>	not associate with <i>Her mother told her to <b>keep away from</b> that crowd.</i>
<b>keep up with</b>	maintain the same level as <i>You run too fast; I can't <b>keep up with</b> you.</i>
<b>look back on</b>	remember <i>It's fun to <b>look back on</b> all the fun we had together.</i>
<b>look down on</b>	feel superior to <i>You must never, ever, <b>look down on</b> other people.</i>
<b>look in on</b>	make sure that all is in order <i>Thank you for <b>looking in on</b> my mother every evening.</i>
<b>look up to</b>	admire and respect <i>We will always <b>look up to</b> our mother and father.</i>
<b>make up with</b>	reestablish a relationship <i>They're not fighting anymore; he <b>made up with</b> her.</i>
<b>put up with</b>	tolerate <i>She refused to <b>put up with</b> his laziness, and kicked him out.</i>
<b>run around with</b>	spend leisure time with questionable people <i>I heard he was <b>running around with</b> a gang.</i>
<b>run out of</b>	exhaust the supply of <i>We <b>ran out of</b> gas in the middle of nowhere.</i>
<b>stand in for</b>	substitute for <i>She couldn't come, so her sister is <b>standing in for</b> her.</i>
<b>stand up for</b>	support or witness <i>All of his friends <b>stood up for</b> him at the trial.</i>
<b>try out for</b>	audition for <i>He is <b>trying out for</b> the part of the king in the school play.</i>
<b>watch out for</b>	be wary of



*Watch out for potholes in the road!*

## **PRACTICE**

**7-1. Rewrite each sentence, using a verb-adverb-preposition expression in place of the underlined words.**

1. My sister is going to stop dating her boyfriend tonight.  
*My sister is going to break up with her boyfriend tonight.*
2. I don't understand how she tolerates her new roommate.
3. He is looking for another teacher to substitute for him tomorrow.
4. The doctor told her to drink less coffee.
5. If you have a cold, you should avoid other people as much as possible.
6. It is hard for the smaller children to maintain the pace of the big ones.
7. We have to go to the store; we have exhausted our supply of milk for the baby.
8. The children are exhausted from playing all day.
9. They will have to confront the facts.
10. We all respect and admire our boss.

## UNIT 8:

# Phrasal Verbs Used as Nouns

Many phrasal verbs are commonly used as nouns. There are three ways to write these nouns:

as two separate words

EXAMPLE:

**rip off** a rip off a robbery

*I had to pay fifteen dollars to park my car. What a **rip off**!*

with a hyphen between the two words

EXAMPLE:

**stand-in** a stand-in a substitute

*She worked as a **stand-in** when the manager was on vacation.*

as one word

EXAMPLE:

**turnout** a turnout the size of an audience

*We had a great **turnout** for our baseball game.*

Unfortunately, there is no good rule or guideline to help us know which of the three forms to use. Many organizations have their own style manual to specify the usage they prefer.

Use these combinations as singular or plural nouns; use noun-determiners and descriptive adjectives as usual.

EXAMPLES OF PHRASAL VERBS USED AS NOUNS:

**blowout** a tire that has burst

*We had a **blowout** on the highway.*

**breakdown** a collapse

*Rioters crowded the streets, and there was a general **breakdown** of order.*

<b>break-in</b>	an illegal or forced entry into a room or building <i>We had a <b>break-in</b> at the office last night; several computers were stolen.</i>
<b>break-up</b>	a separation caused by disagreement <i>The young girl was unhappy about the <b>break-up</b> with her boyfriend.</i>
<b>close-up</b>	a photograph of someone's face <i>That photographer is very good at <b>close-ups</b>.</i>
<b>come-on</b>	an incentive <i>The free T-shirts at the game were a <b>come-on</b> to get more people to buy tickets.</i>
<b>cover up</b>	an attempt to hide the truth <i>The <b>cover-up</b> of the crime made it difficult to investigate.</i>
<b>getaway</b>	a vacation <i>That travel agency advertises exotic <b>getaways</b>.</i>
<b>giveaway</b>	something that can be obtained for free <i>There were a lot of prizes and <b>giveaways</b> at the fair.</i>
<b>hand-me-down</b>	clothing used first by an older child and later by a younger one <i>As the youngest child in a big family, almost all her clothes were <b>hand-me-downs</b>.</i>
<b>handout</b>	free food or supplies <i>Many homeless people survive on <b>handouts</b>.</i>
<b>hangout</b>	a place where friends often go for relaxation or entertainment <i>The bar on the corner is their favorite <b>hangout</b>.</i>
<b>hang-up</b>	a psychological problem <i>Her insecurity is one of her <b>hang-ups</b>.</i>
<b>kickback</b>	money received by a controlling agent in a business transaction <i>We believe somebody got a <b>kickback</b> in that business deal.</i>

<b>leftovers</b>	<p>food saved for another meal</p> <p><i>We have <b>leftovers</b> for a week after a big holiday meal.</i></p>
<b>letdown</b>	<p>a return to normal life after a time of excitement</p> <p><i>It was a big <b>letdown</b> for her to go back to work after her long vacation.</i></p>
<b>lookout</b>	<p>a place for observing the activities of others</p> <p><i>The detective had a great <b>lookout</b> from the tenth floor of that building.</i></p>
<b>makeup</b>	<p>paint for the face</p> <p><i>Most women look better with a little <b>makeup</b>.</i></p>
<b>markdown</b>	<p>merchandise that has been reduced in price</p> <p><i>The <b>markdowns</b> are in the basement of the store.</i></p>
<b>mix-up</b>	<p>confusion caused by an error</p> <p><i>There were a lot of <b>mix-ups</b> during our tour; most of the information we received about prices, hours of operation, and transportation was incorrect.</i></p>
<b>pullover</b>	<p>a sweater that you put on by pulling it over your head</p> <p><i><b>Pullovers</b> are comfortable and attractive.</i></p>
<b>pushover</b>	<p>a gullible person</p> <p><i>Her husband is a <b>pushover</b>; he will buy anything from a slick salesman.</i></p>
<b>rip-off</b>	<p>a high price for something of lesser value</p> <p><i>He paid too much for that antique chair; it was a <b>rip-off</b>.</i></p>
<b>show-off</b>	<p>a person who constantly demonstrates his talents</p> <p><i>I don't like to dance with him because he is a big <b>show-off</b>.</i></p>
<b>stand-in</b>	<p>a substitute</p> <p><i>The <b>stand-in</b> for the main actor did a great job.</i></p>
<b>step up</b>	<p>an improvement in status</p> <p><i>The new house is a <b>step up</b> for him.</i></p>

<b>takeoff</b>	departure of an airplane <i>The <b>takeoff</b> was smooth, but the landing was difficult.</i>
<b>takeover</b>	the assumption of control, management, or responsibility of another group <i>There have been a lot of <b>takeovers</b> of big companies this year.</i>
<b>tryouts</b>	auditions <i>If you want to be on the team, come to the <b>tryouts</b> tomorrow afternoon.</i>
<b>turnaround</b>	a change in attitude <i>When he met her he went from depressed to cheerful; it was a complete <b>turnaround</b>.</i>
<b>turnout</b>	the number of people attending an event <i>The <b>turnout</b> for the office picnic was great; almost everybody came.</i>
<b>workout</b>	a session of exercise <i>A daily <b>workout</b> can improve your disposition.</i>
<b>write-up</b>	an article in a newspaper or a magazine <i>There was a big <b>write-up</b> about our friend in last week's paper.</i>

## PRACTICE

### 8-1. Write the appropriate nouns in the blanks.

1. Our tire burst on the highway. We had a \_\_\_\_\_.
2. My friend is going to a psychologist to try to get rid of her \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The beach is private and quiet; it is a perfect \_\_\_\_\_ for a busy couple.
4. The woman carefully applied lipstick, powder, and mascara; she was an expert at putting on \_\_\_\_\_.
5. She paid two thousand dollars for that old, broken-down car. What a \_\_\_\_\_!

6. That soccer player always gets the ball and dances around with it. He is a big \_\_\_\_\_.
7. If you want to audition for the school chorus, come to the auditorium for \_\_\_\_\_ on Thursday at four o'clock.
8. The kids always go there to relax after school. It's their favorite \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Walking fast for an hour every day is a good \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Be sure to read the review of the show in the newspaper. It was an excellent \_\_\_\_\_.

## UNIT 9:

# Phrasal Verbs Used as Adjectives

Verb-preposition combinations are used as adjectives in some common expressions.

When used as adjectives before nouns, these combinations are hyphenated.

### **carry-out/take-out food**

food prepared and sold to be eaten somewhere else

*She lives alone and thrives on **carry-out food**.*

### **check-out counter**

the place where the cashier is located

*Please take all your purchases to the **check-out counter**.*

### **drive-by shooting**

a crime involving the indiscriminate use of a gun from a vehicle

*The wounded people were victims of a **drive-by shooting**.*

### **drive-in restaurant/movie; drive-through bank/carwash**

a business where people enjoy the services without leaving their cars

***Drive-in movies** were popular in the fifties, but not anymore.*

### **hand-me-down clothes**

used clothes

*In order to save money, the student wore **hand-me-down clothes**.*

### **left-over food**

prepared food saved from a previous meal

***Left-over food** is never as good as it was when it was fresh.*

### **run-down neighborhood**

a neglected area

*There are too many **run-down neighborhoods** in the city.*

**stand-up comic**

an entertainer who stands at a microphone and tells jokes

*He made quite a bit of money as a **stand-up comic**.*

**sit-down dinner/lunch/meal**

a meal where the food is served at the table, rather than buffet style.

*They had a wonderful **sit-down dinner** at their wedding reception.*

**wake-up call**

a telephone call ordered by a hotel guest to help him wake up

*Our plane is leaving early in the morning, so we will need a **wake-up call**.*

**wind-up toy**

a mechanical toy that works by turning a key

*The children love to play with **wind-up toys**.*

**PRACTICE**

**9-1. Fill in each blank with a verb-preposition combination used as an adjective:**

1. You can pay for your groceries at the \_\_\_\_\_ counter.
2. I'm cooking dinner at home tonight; I'm really tired of \_\_\_\_\_ food.
3. Whenever I check into a hotel, I ask for a \_\_\_\_\_ call for the next morning.
4. The politicians promised to help clean up the \_\_\_\_\_ neighborhoods around the city.
5. It is very convenient to deposit your checks at a \_\_\_\_\_ bank.





## PART FIVE

# **Prepositions as Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs**

In the following examples, a preposition has been added to the beginning of the original word, making it more specific.

## UNIT 1:

# Nouns

In the following examples, a preposition has been added to the beginning of the original word, making it more specific.

<b>byline</b>	a line at the beginning of an article with the author's name <i>His article was published, and he was pleased to see his name on the <b>byline</b>.</i>
<b>bypass</b>	a route that goes around a city, rather than through it <i>Taking the <b>bypass</b> saves a lot of time.</i> a surgical operation that avoids the main organ <i>Her father had a heart <b>bypass</b> last month.</i>
<b>downgrade</b>	a change to a lower quality <i>His new position is a <b>downgrade</b> in salary, but he is happier.</i>
<b>downpour</b>	a heavy rain <i>The streets are flooded after that <b>downpour</b> yesterday.</i>
<b>downswing</b>	a reduction in business activity <i>There was a <b>downswing</b> in the first quarter of the year.</i>
<b>downtown</b>	the heart of a city <i>Let's go <b>downtown</b> tonight and have fun.</i>
<b>input</b>	the contribution of ideas <i>We really need your <b>input</b> for this proposal.</i>
<b>off chance</b>	an unlikely possibility <i>He called me on the <b>off chance</b> that I would be available.</i>
<b>offshoot</b>	a branch <i>That group is an <b>offshoot</b> of a national organization.</i>

<b>outbreak</b>	an eruption <i>There has been an <b>outbreak</b> of the flu in this city.</i>
<b>outlaw</b>	a criminal <i>The cowboy films always have heroes and <b>outlaws</b>.</i>
<b>outpost</b>	a place of business far away from city life <i>His store is a little <b>outpost</b> in the middle of nowhere.</i>
<b>outpouring</b>	an abundance <i>There was an <b>outpouring</b> of sympathy for the widow.</i>
<b>output</b>	production <i>Our <b>output</b> for the month was huge; we made a lot of money.</i>
<b>overkill</b>	failure caused by too much effort <i>The salesman talked so much that the client lost interest; it was complete <b>overkill</b>.</i>
<b>overpass</b>	a bridge that extends over a road <i>An <b>overpass</b> is being built at that intersection; it will ease the traffic situation.</i>
<b>throughway</b>	highway <i>You should go on the <b>throughway</b>; it's much faster.</i>
<b>underdog</b>	the team or person not expected to succeed <i>It's exciting when the <b>underdog</b> wins in a tournament.</i>
<b>underpass</b>	a road built underneath another road <i>To get on the main highway, you need to get on the <b>underpass</b> first.</i>
<b>underpinnings</b>	foundation <i>If the <b>underpinnings</b> are strong, the building will be safe.</i>
<b>update</b>	the latest information <i>The television stations are giving us an <b>update</b> on the tragedy every five minutes.</i>

<b>upheaval</b>	a disruption <i>There is a big <b>upheaval</b> going on in our office; a lot of people are being transferred.</i>
<b>upstart</b>	ambitious newcomer <i>The new assistant tried to change our office procedures during her first week. What an <b>upstart</b>!</i>
<b>upsurge</b>	increase in activity <i>There was an <b>upsurge</b> during the second quarter, thank goodness!</i>
<b>upswing</b>	increase in activity <i>There has been a steady <b>upswing</b> this year.</i>

Certain expressions use prepositions in noun form.

<b>backup</b>	someone who can substitute if necessary <i>I think I am well enough to do the job; if not, my colleague is here as a <b>backup</b>.</i>
<b>the ins and outs</b>	all of the details <i>After owning a restaurant for twenty years, he knows all <b>the ins and outs</b> of the business.</i>
<b>the ups and downs</b>	the good things and the bad things <i>We learn to cope with <b>the ups and downs</b> of life.</i>

## PRACTICE

### 1-1. Fill in each blank with a preposition-noun combination:

1. That business lost money during the \_\_\_\_\_ in August.
2. The arrival of tourists in the spring means a big \_\_\_\_\_ in business activity.
3. At the meeting they asked for \_\_\_\_\_ from everybody in the department.

4. Our boss gives us an \_\_\_\_\_ on the company's activities at the end of every month.
5. You'd better get a flu shot in case there is an \_\_\_\_\_ of the flu next winter.

## UNIT 2:

# Adjectives

In the following examples, a preposition has been added to the beginning of the original word, making it more specific.

<b>backup</b>	reserve <i>There is a <b>backup</b> crew in case you need help.</i>
<b>bygone</b>	past <i>In <b>bygone</b> days, the pace of life was slower.</i>
<b>downbeat</b>	unhappy <i>He has been <b>downbeat</b> ever since his girlfriend left town.</i>
<b>for-profit</b>	money-making <i>That group looks like a charity, but it is really a <b>for-profit</b> operation.</i>
<b>in-class</b>	activity done in the classroom, rather than as homework <i>We have to write an <b>in-class</b> composition.</i>
<b>incoming</b>	being received <i>The <b>incoming</b> mail should go in that pile.</i>
<b>off-color</b>	obscene <i>I really hate his <b>off-color</b> remarks.</i>
<b>offshore</b>	in the ocean or sea <i>They are trying to regulate the <b>offshore</b> drilling of oil.</i>
<b>off-the-cuff</b>	spontaneous <i>Her <b>off-the-cuff</b> remarks prove her to be very well informed.</i>
<b>ongoing</b>	currently in progress

*Everyone is sick of the long **ongoing** investigation.*

**online**            pertaining to the Internet  
***Online** services get better every day.*

**outgoing**        extroverted  
*He is one of the most **outgoing** young people I have ever met.*

**out-of-the-way**   far away, and not on the main road  
*He proposed to her at a romantic, **out-of-the-way** restaurant.*

**overbearing**    domineering  
*Life is stressful when you have an **overbearing** boss.*

**overdone**        ruined from cooking too long  
*The dinner wasn't good; the meat was raw and the vegetables were **overdone**.*

**overextended**   too busy  
*Her life is very stressful because of her **overextended** schedule.*

**overjoyed**       very happy  
*He was **overjoyed** when he heard the news.*

**overpaid**        receiving more money than one is worth  
*The organization has a few **overpaid** employees.*

**underdone**      not cooked long enough  
*The meat was **underdone**, so we put it back in the oven.*

**underpaid**      paid less than one is worth  
*The workers at that factory are **underpaid**.*

**upbeat**          in a good mood  
*Everybody is **upbeat** because of the holidays.*

**upmarket**        stylish and expensive  
*The new mall has only **upmarket** shops; there are no discount stores there.*

In the following expressions, prepositions are used in the form of adjectives:

**the downside**

the negative aspect

*The **downside** of my new job is that I have to work on Saturdays.*

**the in crowd/thing/place**

what is currently popular

*In high school, she was always part of **the in crowd**.  
Body piercing was **the in thing** in the early nineties.  
That nightclub is **the in place** for the over-thirty crowd.*

**the inside story**

information known only by the people concerned

*The tabloid newspapers always claim to have **the inside story**, but it is usually only speculation.*

**the upside**

the positive aspect

*The **upside** of the new job is that there will be a lot of international travel.*

## PRACTICE

**2-1. Fill in each blank with a preposition-adjective combination with the indicated meaning:**

1. We were \_\_\_\_\_ (thrilled) at the news.
2. She got the information through her \_\_\_\_\_ (Internet) contacts.
3. Many people are \_\_\_\_\_ (given too much work) and \_\_\_\_\_ (given very low wages).
4. Her new boyfriend is friendly and \_\_\_\_\_ (extroverted).
5. During the interview they explained the \_\_\_\_\_ (positive) and the \_\_\_\_\_ (negative) of working there.



## UNIT 3:

# Verbs

In the following examples, a preposition has been added to the beginning of a verb, giving it more specific meaning.

**bypass** to go around a city to avoid the downtown traffic  
*If you are in a hurry, you can **bypass** Philadelphia by taking the alternate route.*

**downgrade** to lower in quality or status  
*They **downgraded** her job, so she is looking for another one.*

**download** to add software to a computer  
*She **downloaded** a new program this morning.*

**outdo** to surpass  
*She is very ambitious; she wants to **outdo** everybody.*

**outlaw** to make illegal  
*They have **outlawed** smoking in many public places.*

**outpace** to go faster  
*The men **outpaced** the boys right from the beginning of the race.*

**overcome** to conquer  
*She **overcame** her shyness and made a lot of friends.*

**overdo** to work too hard  
*After the operation, the doctor told him not to **overdo** it.*

**overtake** to reach and then surpass  
*We knew him when he was just learning to dance, but he **overtook** us and is now a professional.*

- overturn** to change from a negative situation to a positive one  
*There has been a big **overturn** in the school system.*
- overwhelm** to surprise in the extreme  
*The teacher was **overwhelmed** by the party the students gave in her honor.*
- undercut** to succeed by offering a lower price than one's competitors  
*Discount stores usually **undercut** the department stores.*
- update** announce the latest news  
*Have they **updated** the hurricane warning?*
- upgrade** to raise in quality or status  
*She is earning more money because they **upgraded** her job.*
- withdraw** to stop participating  
*It is a shame you have to **withdraw** from the class.*
- withhold** keep money that will be owed to you at a later date  
*The government **withholds** part of your salary for income tax.*

In the following expressions, prepositions are used in the form of verbs.

- to “down” something** to drink something very fast  
*After the race, he **downed** four glasses of water.*
- to “up” something** to increase something  
*I wish I had bought that coat last year; they have **upped** the price.*  
*The gym workout is getting easier; it's time to **up** the weights on the machines.*

## PRACTICE

### 3-1. Fill in each blank with an appropriate preposition-verb combination:

1. In an effort to save money, they are going to \_\_\_\_\_  
 (decrease the status of) a lot of jobs.

2. I hope they can \_\_\_\_\_ (conquer) all of their difficulties.
3. That team didn't have enough players and they had to  
\_\_\_\_\_ (cancel participation) from the tournament.
4. He bought her a huge diamond ring, hoping to \_\_\_\_\_  
(surprise and impress) her.
5. Do you think they will ever \_\_\_\_\_ (prohibit) guns in  
this country?

A large, light gray, stylized letter 'R' graphic that serves as a background element on the left side of the page.

# **Appendices**

## **Appendix 1: Answer Key**

## Part One

- 1-1 1. story 2. complaint 3. jokes 4. learn 5. told 6. unkind 7. excited 8. twenty dollars 9. finished 10. scattered
- 1-2 1. We are not about to go there. 2. She did an about-face.
- 1-3 1. The president's announcement brought about riots.  
2. Is your great-grandmother able to get about by herself?
- 2-1 1. sofa 2. hang 3. principal 4. cruelty 5. article
- 2-2 1. The policeman went above and beyond the call of duty.  
2. Even the president is not above the law.
- 3-1 1. swim 2. street 3. library 4. state
- 3-2 1. I came across this recipe in my mother's cookbook.  
2. Her brother tried to get it across that she should be quiet.  
3. I hope to get my message across to the audience.
- 4-1 1. read the instructions 2. your name 3. the school bus 4. studying 5. day
- 4-2 1. After all is said and done, we will be happy.  
2. David didn't study for the test, but he got a good grade after all.
- 4-3 1. She takes after her dad.  
2. The baby was named after her grandmother.  
3. The babysitter looks after the children on Thursday afternoons.
- 5-1 1. suitcase 2. current 3. age 4. windows 5. dark hair 6. loan 7. the flu 8. gun control
- 5-2 1. It goes against the grain that teacher salaries are so low.  
2. They became prosperous against all odds.  
3. We're up against the state champions tomorrow night.
- 6-1 1. late 2. five classes
- 6-2 1. We asked if we could look around, and they said to go ahead.  
2. They were just trying to get ahead.  
3. His brother is trying to get ahead of him at tennis.

- 7-1 1. path 2. work
- 7-2 1. You thought we were angry, but we were just pretending all along.
- 7-3 1. It's important to get along with your classmates.
- 8-1 1. ourselves 2. winners 3. flowers
- 9-1 1. house 2. world 3. corner 4. scarf 5. moping 6. snooped 7. twenty-five dollars 8. five o'clock
- 9-2 1. Drive around back.  
2. You have to turn around.  
3. She's giving him the run around.
- 9-3 1. She really gets around.  
2. Can you show me around the campus?  
3. We are just hanging around.  
4. His older brother kicks him around.
- 10-1 1. works 2. captain
- 11-1 1. school 2. 123 Oak Street 3. smiled 4. computer 5. war 6. latest 7. 75 miles per hour 8. 40 cents per pound 9. 3,000 feet 10. the news
- 11-2 1. They are at work.  
2. Don't try to do everything at once.  
3. We arrived at last.  
4. We were happy at first.  
5. He's at an advantage.  
6. I keep her at arm's length.  
7. I don't know what he's getting at.  
8. He made a pass at me.
- 11-3 1. The child picked at the scab.
- 12-1 1. the store 2. came 3. call
- 12-2 1. The officer told her to step back/to move back.  
2. I wanted to get back at her.  
3. I'll get back to you when I have the information.  
4. We need to cut back on movies.

- 13-1 1. a lot of people 2. four P.M. 3. the judge
- 14-1 1. Maria 2. Mrs. Martínez's and Miss Evans's classes 3. idea 4. problems
- 14-2 1. The bus is behind (schedule).  
2. You are behind the times.
- 15-1 1. normal 2. mine
- 15-2 1. It was below the belt.
- 16-1 1. other people 2. pillow 3. cheating
- 17-1 1. sit 2. walk
- 17-2 1. Her comment was beside the point.  
2. The teacher is beside herself.
- 18-1 1. All the girls 2. my brothers
- 19-1 1. fence 2. five 3. Monday and Friday 4. 33 and 40 5. New York and California 6. decide
- 19-2 1. Between you and me, I am not voting for that politician.
- 20-1 1. Chicago 2. homework
- 20-2 1. His behavior was beyond the pale/belief.
- 21-1 1. Monday
- 22-1 1. carpenter 2. 5 P.M. 3. gallon 4. 1,800 5. babysitting 6. rocks 7. 10 points
- 22-2 1. By all means, ask for help if you need it.  
2. She is kind by nature.  
3. By the way, don't forget the meeting next week.  
4. Some people work by night and sleep by day.  
5. She was (all) by herself.  
6. I found this old photo by chance.  
7. Do you by any chance know my father?
- 22-3 1. He stood by me when I needed help.



2. Could you run that story by me again?
3. She gets by.
4. Can we stop by/drop by this afternoon?
5. I go by your house on my way home from work.

23-1 1. work 2. each other 3. three hours

24-1 1. lack of experience 2. traffic

25-1 1. slide 2. tree 3. street

25-2 1. He hung the picture upside down.

- 25-3
1. The government is cracking down on homelessness.
  2. I hope you don't come down with a cold.
  3. Julia's mother will calm her down.
  4. Please tell your dog to back down.
  5. Please don't let your teacher down.
  6. Are you going to turn the offer down?
  7. Let's buy the computer when the price comes down.
  8. She looks down her nose at the newcomers.
  9. It's a good idea to write your passwords down.
  10. Stop putting me down in front of your friends.

26-1 1. sleep 2. football game

27-1 1. Abe 2. Saturdays and Sundays

28-1 1. our house 2. honest

29-1 1. surprise 2. relaxation 3. tickets 4. winning 5. a warm coat 6. difficult  
7. cat 8. grabs 9. leaving 10. bill 11. free 12. happy 13. drove 14. good  
15. music 16. good 17. actress 18. higher wages

- 29-2
1. Please help me for once.
  2. We didn't trust the travel guidebook, so we went there and saw for ourselves.
  3. You're on time—for a change!
  4. He decided to stop calling her once and for all.

5. It was very hot, so I decided to go for a swim.
  6. We cannot change the situation now; we will stay quiet for the time being.
- 29-3
1. They stood up for the mayor.
  2. He (really) cares for his mom.
  3. She is trying out for the play next week.
  4. The university will not stand for cheating.
  5. No thank you. I don't care for dessert.
- 30-1
1. hears 2. deleted 3. graduate 4. took off 5. 9 A.M. to 5 P.M. 6. \$60,000 to \$70,000 7. see 8. tired 9. crying 10. tell
- 31-1
1. car 2. notebook 3. chorus 4. 80s 5. 30 minutes 6. used paper 7. hand 8. portions 9. this 10. the rain. 11. black and white 12. rhythm 13. style 14. treat 15. grades
- 31-2
1. He will have to pass a driving test in addition to a written test.
  2. A ban on smoking on campus is in the air.
- 31-3
1. Someone broke in last night.
  2. We were having a private conversation, and he kept butting in.
  3. You should check in at the hotel as soon as you arrive.
  4. Before the plane lands, you have to fill in this form.
  5. Count me in!
- 32-1
1. him 2. tennis court
- 33-1
1. experiences 2. class
- 34-1
1. house 2. surprise
- 35-1
1. to the mall 2. Australia
- 36-1
1. stomped 2. debt 3. trouble
- 36-2
1. I don't want to get into trouble!
- 36-3
1. They talked me into going with them.
  2. I wonder if I'll run into anybody I know at the game.

- 37-1 1. mangoes 2. crazy 3. argue
- 38-1 1. near 2. her job
- 39-1 1. me and Taylor 2. favorite
- 40-1 1. the alphabet 2. private 3. mathematics 4. fourth 5. loaves 6. noise 7. a couple 8. the sky 9. rid 10. disgust
- 40-2 1. I didn't have the right of way.  
2. We needed a change of scenery.
- 41-1 1. jumped 2. close to 3. school 4. lights
- 41-2 1. This is off the record, but I heard that the teacher is going to a different school.  
2. His behavior is off the wall.  
3. That bar is off limits to the kids.  
4. My sister hit it off with my friends.  
5. She is better off.
- 41-3 1. They called the wedding off.  
2. I was nodding off during the meeting.  
3. Hey—knock it off!  
4. He was laid off.  
5. His bad manners put everyone off.  
6. What time does your plane take off?
- 42-1 1. standing 2. boardwalk 3. house 4. street 5. hands and knees 6. gloves  
7. weekends 8. health care 9. basketball team 10. order
- 42-2 1. I'm trying to log on.  
2. My computer is on the blink.  
3. Elena is always on time.  
4. She has a crush on the camp counselor.  
5. On your mark, get set, go!
- 42-3 1. We have to get on the bus now.  
2. It's hard for her to put her clothes on.  
3. It's too bad you missed out on the party.  
4. Don't let those bullies pick on your little sister.

5. You can log on here.

43-1 1. floor 2. cheated

44-1 1. ice cream 2. bed

45-1 1. sat

46-1 1. threw 2. style 3. ran 4. office 5. breath 6. Three 7. kindness

46-2 1. He asked me out. 2. They have checked out (of the hotel) 3. He dropped out (of school) when he was sixteen. 4. She passed out in class. 5. Please pick out four apples. 6. The firemen put out the fire. 7. I spilled coffee on the sofa and tried to get the spot out. 8. They work out together.

47-1 1. car

48-1 1. building 2. head 3. fence 4. dogs 5. state line 6. the speed limit 7. hotel room 8. money

48-2 1. She is head over heels in love with him.  
2. That course is over my head.

48-3 1. Nobody was there when he fell over.  
2. The police officer pulled me over.  
3. He was passed over.  
4. We are thinking your offer over.  
5. Could you please look over these contracts?

49-1 1. your office 2. sixty-five

50-1 1. red light 2. window 3. course 4. illness 5. embassy

50-2 1. Do you think he will come through?  
2. Our contract fell through.  
3. She showed us through the museum.

51-1 1. day 2. city

- 52-1 1. home 2. school 3. flight 4. handed 5. best pianist 6. neighborhood 7. adapt 8. dust 9. obedient 10. a quarter 11. book club 12. gallon
- 52-2 1. He texts me from time to time.  
2. Are you used to the climate here?
- 52-3 1. She came to a few minutes ago.  
2. I am looking forward to your visit.
- 53-1 1. steps 2. contributes 3. hospitable 4. directed
- 54-1 1. midnight 2. April
- 55-1 1. gifts 2. seven 3. laws 4. impression 5. Canada
- 56-1 1. sad 2. thermal underwear
- 57-1 1. 12 P.M. 2. learn
- 58-1 1. hopped 2. hill 3. street 4. scrape 5. game 6. pieces
- 58-2 1. She kept walking up and down the room.  
2. I hope you make up your mind soon.  
3. It's up to you.  
4. The workers are up in arms.  
5. I can't go because I'm up to my ears in work.
- 58-3 1. My mom blew up when she found out.  
2. Please don't bring that topic up at the meeting.  
3. He will need to do extra work in order to catch up to the other children.  
4. I hope this news will cheer you up.  
5. Please hurry up!  
6. Keep up the good work!  
7. She can't keep up with you.  
8. I hope she doesn't pass up this opportunity.  
9. She wrote up her ideas.
- 59-1 1. dance 2. furnished 3. pride 4. toys 5. problems 6. a new company 7. harmony 8. broke up 9. shouting 10. these shoes

- 59-2    1. They were charged with starting the fire.  
          2. Down with the dictator/tyrant!  
          3. She gets along with her roommate.
- 59-3    1. I can't put up with his attitude.  
          2. I don't know how he gets away with his crimes.  
          3. Let's get on with it!
- 60-1    1. neighborhood 2. ten minutes 3. sight
- 61-1    1. her coat 2. training wheels 3. paying
- 61-2    1. She was without a doubt my best teacher.  
          2. We will finish tomorrow without fail.  
          3. That is without question.  
          4. The new boss began to work without ceremony.

## **Part Two**

### **1-1.**

1. in, in, on, at, in
2. since
3. for
4. at, on, by
5. on, of, for/in
6. on, at, around/at, until
7. at, in
8. after
9. through/during
10. during
11. At
12. up

### **2-1A.**

1. on
2. in
3. near
4. far from
5. over
6. in back of/behind
7. at the top of
8. at the bottom of
9. next to
10. against
11. between
12. among

### **2-1B.**

in, in, at, on, at, on, in, at, at, at, in, in, at, on, at, in, on, in

### **3-1.**

1. across
2. up
3. over
4. away from
5. out of
6. down
7. back to
8. into
9. toward
10. through
11. along
12. past
13. around
14. onto
15. off

### **4-1.**

1. about
2. over
3. under
4. between
5. plus
6. from
7. into
8. of

### **5-1.**

1. in
2. in
3. during
4. on
5. in
6. on



7. During
8. On
9. In
10. on

**6-1.**

1. in
2. on
3. on
4. in
5. in
6. in
7. on
8. in
9. on
10. on

**7-1.**

1. of
2. on
3. in
4. on
5. of
6. in
7. of
8. on
9. in
10. on

**8-1.**

1. like
2. above
3. about
4. of

5. about
6. about
7. with
8. of
9. like
10. with

### **9-1.**

1. in
2. on
3. with, on
4. have, on
5. in
6. on
7. in
8. with, on
9. on
10. in

### **10-1.**

1. about
2. about/over
3. about
4. in
5. about
6. on
7. in
8. at
9. in
10. on
11. over
12. in
13. at
14. of/about
15. over

16. in
17. at
18. of
19. on
20. about

### **11-1.**

1. to
2. for
3. on
4. for
5. to
6. to/for
7. for
8. to
9. to
10. for
11. for
12. to/for

### **12-1.**

1. out of
2. under
3. in
4. at
5. on
6. in
7. in
8. on
9. on
10. in
11. in
12. on
13. out of
14. in

15. under

**13-1.**

1. of
2. out of/from
3. with
4. from
5. of
6. off
7. out of
8. from
9. off
10. of

**14-1.**

1. of
2. for
3. to
4. for
5. at/with
6. about
7. at
8. in
9. of
10. of
11. with
12. about
13. about
14. for
15. about

**15-1.**

1. with
2. about

3. to
4. on
5. to
6. to/with
7. with
8. with
9. to
10. about

### **15-2.**

1. to
2. with
3. toward
4. on
5. to
6. to
7. on
8. at
9. about
10. with

### **15-3.**

1. in
2. with
3. in
4. in
5. in
6. in
7. with
8. in
9. with
10. with

## **Part Three**

### **1-1.**

1. with a pen
2. for a girl/for this girl/for that girl/for another girl
3. to Mary's cousin
4. without a book
5. from a nice boy
6. between Mary and another girl
7. in Mary's house
8. for another apple
9. next to a/the tall boy
10. near Mr. Johnson's house

### **1-2.**

1. for three apples
2. without friends
3. in the United States
4. from many countries
5. to lots of places/to a lot of places
6. except these exercises
7. with other friends
8. at plenty of stores
9. by other teachers
10. from the Smiths

### **1-3.**

1. for this furniture
2. for fresh air
3. with new jewelry
4. without much hot water
5. with a little machinery
6. of sugar

7. by mail
8. with too much junk
9. for meat
10. for equipment

#### **1-4.**

1. them
2. it
3. them
4. her
5. us
6. them
7. him
8. it
9. it
10. him and her/them
11. you
12. her and me/us
13. us
14. them
15. them

#### **1-5.**

1. studying, working
2. exercising
3. taking
4. driving
5. buying
6. moving
7. cooking, cleaning
8. playing
9. winning
10. taking

#### **1.6.**

1. working
2. work
3. working
4. work
5. working
6. work
7. work
8. work
9. working
10. work
11. working
12. work
13. working

## **2-1.**

1. Is the letter from your mother?
2. Are you in Chicago?
3. Where are you from?/What state are you from?
4. What city are they from?
5. Who is the picture of?
6. What is the article about?
7. What time is the class?
8. Where is the concert?

## **2-2.**

1. What/Which department does she work in?
2. Where does he call from?
3. Does he send email to text you?
4. Who(m) does he send email to?
5. Does he drive through Washington state?
6. What state does he drive through?
7. What do they talk about?
8. Who(m) do they discuss it with?
9. Where does he go every summer?
10. Who(m) does she make cookies for?



11. Where does he work?
12. What time does he work?

### **3-1.**

1. where she is from.
2. who(m) he is talking to.
3. what she writes with.
4. who(m) they live with.
5. who(m) this letter is for.
6. what he does that for.
7. what company she works for.
8. which bus she is coming on.
9. who(m) she writes letters to.
10. which courses I am registered for.

### **4-1.**

1. The man [who(m)] she writes letters to is my father.
2. The house (that) my friends are looking at is beautiful.
3. Those are the children [who(m)] my daughter plays with.
4. The teacher [who(m)] we talked to yesterday isn't here.
5. The piano (that) he paid a lot of money for is fabulous.
6. I am looking for the boy [who(m)] I gave five dollars to.
7. She likes the neighbor [who(m)] she goes to the movies with.
8. I lost the bag (that) I put my money in.
9. I found the jacket (that) I took my keys out of.
10. He can't remember the street (that) he parked on.

## Part Four

### 1-1.

1. We asked for it.
2. She is going to call on them next week.
3. They just got on it.
4. I came across them.
5. The policeman is coming after you.
6. She ran into them at the mall.
7. I am going to stand by him/her.
8. He just went through them.
9. We are looking for it.
10. That boy takes after him.

### 1-2.

1. did you ask for?
2. is she going to call on?
3. did they just get on?
4. did you come across?
5. is the policeman coming after?
6. did she run into at the mall?
7. are you going to stand by?
8. did he just go through?
9. wallet are you looking for?
10. does that boy take after?

### 1-3.

1. are looking for.
2. was going through.
3. had checked into.
4. cares about.
5. is running for.

#### **1-4.**

1. he was looking for.
2. somebody broke into.
3. she hopes to hear from?
4. the teacher picks on.
5. I have never heard of.

#### **2-1.**

1. I called him/Pedro back.
2. Patricia did the test/it over.
3. We invited André/him over.
4. He let his teacher/her/him down.
5. They named the baby/him after my father.
6. The teacher kicked Angela/her out (of the classroom).
7. He turned Soo/her down.
8. The long swim wore Jessica and me/us out.
9. The guide showed Jason and his family/them around.
10. They passed Miriam/her over.

#### **2-2.**

1. Did you call Pedro/him back?
2. Did she do the test/it over?
3. Did you invite André/him over?
4. Did he let his teacher/her/him down?
5. Did they name the baby/him after your father?
6. Did the teacher kick Angela/her out?
7. Did he turn Soo/her down?
8. Did the long swim wear Jessica and you/you (all) out?
9. Did the guide show Jason and his family/them around?
10. Did they pass Miriam/her over?

#### **3-1.**

1. The teacher came in and broke it up.

2. Don't bring it up.
3. Are you going to call it off?
4. We will clean it up.
5. I have to fill them out.
6. She is trying to get it off her shoes.
7. Did you give it back?
8. We looked her up in Pittsburgh.
9. He always mixes them up.

### **3-2.**

1. They looked the new house over./They looked over the new house.
2. We are going to pass our papers in./We are going to pass in our papers.
3. He has to pay the money back./He has to pay back the money.
4. Did they kick Jennifer out?/Did they kick out Jennifer?
5. I hope she doesn't pass this opportunity up./I hope she doesn't pass up this opportunity.

### **4-1.**

1. She wants to get out of the car.
2. He hung up on me.
3. We are running out of milk.
4. The teacher mixes John up with Jim.
5. He is taking it out on me!
6. We need to check out of the hotel.
7. I got out of lunch duty.
8. She is going to break up with him.

### **5-1.**

1. Did he bring them up to the fourth floor?
2. Is she going to check them out of the library?
3. Is he trying to get it out of his shirt?
4. Did we get them back from the dry cleaners?
5. Is he going to hand it in to the manager tomorrow?
6. Should you hang it up?

7. Does she mix it up with her fingers?
8. Are the police going to run them out of town?
9. Does she take them out of the car herself?
10. Did I write it down on a scrap of paper?

### **6-1.**

1. The children acted up.
2. I hope the boss doesn't blow up because we are late.
3. I'm so glad you dropped in.
4. Please try to calm down.
5. Do you think they will catch on?
6. What time did you drop off?
7. It is important to grow up.
8. Those kids hang around all day.
9. He passed out in class.
10. We passed the exam; we lucked out.

### **7-1.**

1. My sister is going to break up with her boyfriend tonight.
2. I don't understand how she puts up with her new roommate.
3. He is looking for another teacher to fill in for him tomorrow.
4. The doctor told her to cut back on coffee.
5. If you have a cold, you should keep away from/stay away from other people as much as possible.
6. It is hard for the smaller children to keep up with the big ones.
7. We have to go to the store; we have run out of milk for the baby.
8. The children are worn out from playing all day.
9. They will have to face up to the facts.
10. We all look up to our boss.

### **8-1.**

1. blowout
2. hang-ups
3. getaway

4.      makeup
5.      rip-off
6.      show-off
7.      tryouts
8.      hangout
9.      workout
10.     write-up

**9-1.**

1.      check-out
2.      carry-out/take-out
3.      wake-up
4.      run-down
5.      drive-through

## **Part Five**

### **1-1.**

1. downswing
2. upsurge
3. input
4. update
5. outbreak

### **2-1.**

1. overjoyed
2. online
3. overworked, underpaid
4. outgoing
5. up, down

### **3-1.**

1. downgrade
2. overcome
3. withdraw
4. overwhelm
5. outlaw

## Appendix 2: Index of Phrases

PRECEDING PREPOSITION OR OTHER PARTICLE/S	NOUN OR VERB	FOLLOWING PREPOSITION	PAGE NUMBER
	be abhorrent	to	165–166
	in one's absence		89
	an absence	of	116
	to abuse someone	(all) through	160
	from one's accent		82
	be acceptable	to	165–166
	in acceptance		94
	be accessible	for	71
	in accord	with	194–195
	on account	of	117
	on account	of	131
	in accounting		90
	be accustomed	to	166–167
	an ache	in one's . . .	92
	be aching	with	196–197
	to act	against	23
	to act	as	34
	to act	for someone	72
	to act	like	107
	to act	up	184
	against an action		23



in action		94
go into action		105
in one's actions		85
to adapt	to	166–167
to add	on	136
to add	to	167
to add	up (to)	184
to add something	on (to)	136
in addition		94–95
in addition	to	96
to adhere	to	167
be adjacent	to	169–170
in administration		90
under an administration		178
to admit	to	166–167
something/nothing adorable	about	13
be beneath adultery		48
in adulthood		85
in advance		85
to advance	in	95
at an advantage		39
advice	for	69
on the advice	of	131
to advise	about	12
to advise someone	of	115
be affectionate	to	167
be affectionate	toward	174

in the affirmative		92–93
to affix	to	167
in the afternoon		85
(all) through the afternoon		160
on nice afternoons		129
at one's age		38
under age		177
with age		195
one's age is	against	24
through an agency		161
be aghast	at	37
to agree	about	11
to agree	on	136
to agree	to	166–167
to agree	with	194–195
in agreement	with	91
an agreement	with	194–195
in agreement	with	194–195
toward an agreement		175
be ahead	of	26
in aid	of	91
to one's aid		165
to aim	at	36
have an air	about	13
in the air		96–97
on the air		134
with an air		191–192

in the air force		90
on an airplane		128
an airplane	to	164
in an airplane (small)		84
off alcohol		121
in an alcove		84
in alignment		90
in alignment	with	91
after all		21
all	along	27
in all		94–95
all	of	113
be allergic	to	166–167
an allergy	to	166–167
of aluminum		115
be amazed	at	37
in analysis		94–95
of anger		114–115
with anger		196–197
with anger		191–192
from an angle		81
be at an angle	to	170–171
be angry	about	11
in anguish		88–89
in anguish	of	117
of anguish		114–115
an animal	of	111–112

out of animosity		145
for one's anniversary		72
on one's anniversary		133
an annoyance	to	165–166
to the annoyance	of	117
be annoying	to	165–166
another	of	113
an answer	for	69
an answer	to	164
an answer	to	166–167
in answer	to	94–95
the answer	to	168
the antidote	to	168
out of anxiety		145
be anxious	about	12
be anxious	for	70
any	of	113
like anything		107
at an apartment		35
an appeal	to	166–167
to apply	for	70
to apply	to	167
in appreciation	of	91
be appreciative	to	167
in apprehension		92–93
in approbation		92–93
in approval		92–93

on approval		134
on approval		135–136
an aptitude	for	74
in architecture		90
within an area		199
to argue	about	11
to argue	against	23
to argue	among	29
to argue	over	153
to argue	with	184–188
an argument	about	11
have an argument	with	184–188
in an argument	with	91
toward an argument		175
arm–in– arm	with	89
at arm’s length		38
be up in arms	about	184
in the army		90
to arrange	above	16
to arrange	into	104–105
on one’s arrival		133
with the arrival	of	196–197
an article	about	11
an article	on	132
in an article		84
be ashamed	of	117
to ask	about	11

to ask	for	70
to ask someone	out	146–148
an assault	on	133–134
in assent		92–93
to assist	in	95
the assistant	to	169
in an association		85
on the assumption	of	131
assurance	about	11
be astonished	at	37
to one's astonishment		165–166
be astounded	at	37
to attach	to	167
to attach something	with	193
be attached	to	169
an attack	on	133–134
at attention		37
pay attention	to	166–167
be attentive	to	167
in an attic		84
after one's attitude		20
one's attitude	toward	174
something/nothing attractive	about	13
be attributable	to	169
to audition	for	70
on the authority	of	131
be available	for	71

be available	to	167
above average		16
on average		129
under average		177
an aversion	to	166–167
an award	to	165
to award	to	165
be aware	of	117
in awe	of	88–89
be awkward	with	191–192
around back		30
be back to back		170–171
on the back	of	112
to back	down (from)	64
to back	off	122–123
to back	up	184
one's background is	against	24
something/nothing bad	about	13
be bad	at	38
be bad	for	71
bad	of someone	118
in bad weather		86–87
in badminton		93
a bag	of	112
by the bag		56
in a bag		84
to bake	for	69

against one's balance		24
in a balcony		84
on the balcony		126
a ban	on	132
to bang	against	23
to bank	on	129
in banking		90
in bankruptcy		92
go into bankruptcy		105
by the barrel		56
through a barricade		158
through a barrier		158
a barrier	to	168
in baseball		93
be based	on	129
in a basement		84
be bashful	about	12
be basking	in	95
to bat something	over	152
in a bathing suit		89–90
to battle	over	153
to be	about	13
to be	across from	18
to be	after	20
to be	ahead of	26
to be	back from	42
to be	in back of	43



to be	beside	49
to be	for	75
to be	from	79
to be	like	107
to be	off	120
to be	on	128–129
to be	out of	144
to be	out of	144
to be	over	151
to be	over	152
to be	through with	159
to be	under	177
to be	up	182
to be	up to	184–188
to be	with	190
to be	with	194–195
to be	with	195
to be	with	190
to be	with	197
to be	with	192–193
off the beach		120
on the beach		126
on the beach		127
be beaming	with	196–197
to beat	against	23
to the beat	of	169
to beat	to a pulp	169–170

with all one's beauty		196–197
because	of	117
in bed		84
to bed		164
to beg	for	70
to beg	off	122–123
to begin	with	195
at the beginning		36
from the beginning		79
from the beginning	of	81
from beginning	to end	81
on behalf	of	131
to behave	like	107
after one's behavior		20
on one's best behavior		134–135
one's behavior	toward	174
beyond belief		53
be belligerent	with	191–192
to belong	to	169
below the belt		47
on the bench		134–135
go around the bend		30
to bend	over	151
be beneficial	to	165–166
to one's benefit		165
at best		39
be for the best		75

to bet	on	129
be better	for someone	71
be better	from	81–82
be better	off	122
for better or	for worse	75
in between		51
the great beyond		53
on a bicycle		128
a bill	for	73
against a bill		23
against one's bill		24
in bills		90
with the bills		196–197
to bind	to	171
through binoculars		161
a bird	of	111–112
on one's birth		133
with the birth	of	196–197
for one's birthday		72
on one's birthday		133
quite a bit	about	11
into bits		104–105
in black		89–90
in the black		88–89
in black and white		88
to the blare	of	169
be blessed	with	191

blind	in	95
on the blink		134–135
around the block		30
to blow	down	63
to blow	into	104
to blow	off	120
to blow	over	154
to blow	toward	174
to blow	up	184
to blow something	down	63
to blow something	into	104
to blow something	off	120
to blow something	out	146–148
to blow something	up	184
above board		17
across the board		18
go by the board		57
on the board		132
on board		134
on the boardwalk		126
in a boat (small)		84
in bold		88
to bone	up on	184
a book	about	11
in a book		84
a book	on	132
to book someone	for	71

a boost	to	168
to boot	up	184–188
on the border	of	127
to bore	to death	169–170
be bored	from	81–82
be bored	with	192
be boring	to	165–166
to borrow	from	79
to borrow something	from	79
under a boss		178
both	of	113
to bother	about	12
a bother	to	165–166
on the bottom	of	127
to bounce	on	127
out of bounds		145
within bounds		199
have a bout	with	193–194
a bowl	of	112
a box	of	112
by the box		56
in a box		84
through the boxes		159–160
in braces		89–90
to brag	about	11
in braids		89–90
a brand	of	112

of brass		115
to break	down	63
to break	in (on)	97
to break	into	104
to break	into	104–105
to break	into	106
to break	off	120
to break	out	146–148
to break	up	184–188
to break	up (with)	195
to break something	down	63
to break something	in	97
to break something	off	122–123
to break something	up	184–188
at breakfast		35
for breakfast		72
over breakfast		153
(all) through breakfast		160
to breakfast		164
above breaking the law		16
beneath breaking the law		48
a breath	of	114
out of breath		144
a bridge	to	164
in the game of bridge		93
in brief		88
to bring	about	14

to bring	back	42
to bring	back to	42
to bring	down	63
to bring	down	63
to bring	from	79
to bring	on	136
to bring	to	165
to bring something	down	63
to bring something	in	87
to bring something	through	158
to bring something	up	182
to bring something	up	184–188
on the brink		134–135
to broadcast something	all over the. . .	153
at a brunch		35
to brush	up (on)	184–188
to brush something	off	120
by the bucket		56
on a budget		134–135
be over one's budget		151
to build	for	69
to build	on	136
to build something	on (to)	136
to build something	out of	144–145
in a building		84
through a building		158
through the building		159–160

within a building		199
by the bunch		56
in bunches		90
in bundles		90
to burn	down	63
to burn	up	184–188
to burn something	up	184–188
to burst	in	87
to burst	into flames	106
to bury something	under	177
on a bus		128
a bus	to	164
at a bus stop		35
by the bushel		56
in business	with	90
on business		131
do business	with	194–195
in busloads		93
to butt	against	23
to butt	in	97
to butt	in	87
to buy	for	69
to buy	from	79
a good buy	on	132
to buy something	for	73
to buy something	from	79
the buzz	of	114



to the buzz	of	169
by and by		57
in cahoots	with	91
in cahoots	with	194–195
on the calculations	of	131
on call		134
to call	back	43
to call	for	70
to call	from	79
to call	on	138
above the call of duty		17
to call someone	up	184–188
to call something	off	122–123
to calm someone	down	64
on calories		130
to campaign	against	23
to campaign	for	70
a can	of	112
in the game of canasta		93
in a canoe		84
be capable	of	115–116
in capital letters		88
the captain	of	111
in captivity		92
in a car		84
a card	to	164
of cardboard		115

in a game of cards		93
to care	about	11
to care	for	76
under the care	of	178
with care		191–192
to care for someone	(all) through	160
be careless	of	118
through carelessness		161
in carloads		93
to carry	above	16
to carry	back to	42
to carry	down	63
to carry	on (with)	138
to carry	through with	161
to carry	to extremes	169–170
to carry	to the limits	169–170
to carry	to	165
to carry something	out	143
to carry something	over	152
to carry something	through	161
to carry something	through	158
to carry something	up	182
to carve something	out of	144–145
in case	of	94–95
in any case		94–95
in that case		94–95
in one's case		94–95

the case	to	169
in cash		90
at the cash register		37
on cassette		130
to catch	on (to)	138
to catch	up on	184–188
to catch	up (with)	184–188
in a category		85
the category	of	112
be caught	with	191
be caused	by	56
on the ceiling		126
to celebrate	among	29
to celebrate	with	195
at a celebration		35
in celebration	of	91
of celebration		116
to center	on	137
in centimeters		91
in a century		85
without ceremony		201
be certain	of	117
to one's chagrin		165–166
in a chair		84
a challenge	for	72
the challenge	of	117
a challenge	to	165–166

be challenging	for	71
by chance		57
by (any) chance		57
off chance		122–123
for a change		75
in change		90
a change	in	95
a change	of pace	116–117
a change	of scenery	116–117
with the change		196–197
in chaos		88–89
in charge		92
on the charge	of	131
be charged	with	197
against one's charges		24
be charitable	toward	174
with all one's charm		196–197
be charming	about	11
be charming	to	167
off the charts		122–123
to chase something	from	79
to chat	with	190
to cheat	on	137
to cheat	(all) through	160
above cheating		16
be beneath cheating		48
a check	for	73

in check		92
to check	in	97
to check	into	106
to check	out	146–148
to check	out (of)	146–148
to check something	in	97
to check something	off	122–123
to check something	out	146–148
in checks		90
tongue in cheek		88
to cheer	at	37
to cheer	for	75
to cheer	up	184–188
to cheer someone	up	184–188
in the game of chess		93
to chew someone	out	146–148
to chicken	out (on)	146–148
to chide someone	for	71
in childhood		85
to chill	to the bone	169–170
to chip	in	97
in a choir		85
to choke	on	130–131
to choose	as	34
to choose	between	51
to chop	off	120
to chop	up	184

in chorus		88
in a chorus		85
at church		35
in church		84
to church		164
off cigarettes		121
in a circle		90
in circulation		92
under the circumstances		178
to cite someone	for	71
a citizen	of	111–112
in a city		84
of a city		111
the city	of	112
all over the city		153
through the city		158
all through the city		159–160
within a city		199
to clash	with	193–194
to clash	with	196
at a class		35
in class		84
a class	of	112
of clay		115
to clean	up	184–188
to clean	with	193
to clean something	off	120

to clean something	up	184–188
to clean something	with	193
to clear something	off	120
to clear something	with	193
to climb	on	127
to climb	over	152
a climb	to	164
to climb	up	182
to cling	on	128
to close	down	64
to close	in (on)	97
to close	out (of)	146–148
be close	to	170–171
to close	up	184–188
be close	up	184–188
to close	with	195
to close something	down	64
to close something	up	184–188
through the closets		159–160
through the clouds		158
in a club		85
of a club		111
a clue	to	168
under a coach		178
off the coast		120
in the coast guard		90
in a coat		89–90

in a cocoon		84
in code		88
over coffee		153
in coins		90
in the cold		86–87
be cold	to	167
in cold blood		89
in cold weather		86–87
to collaborate	with	194–195
in collaboration	with	91
in collaboration	with	194–195
to collect	from	79
to collect something	from	79
in collusion	with	91
in color		88
in a color		89–90
the color	of	112
the color	of	114
off color		122–123
to color	with	193
in combination	with	91
to come	about	14
to come	across	19
to come	after	20
to come	back from	42
to come	down	63
to come	down	63



to come	down with	64
to come	from	79
to come	in	87
to come	into	104
to come	off	120
to come	out of	143
to come	through	161
to come	to	164
to come	to	172
to come	up to	184–188
to come	up with	184–188
in comfort		88–89
be comfortable	with	192
on command		131
in commemoration	of	91
to comment	about	11
out of commission		144
be committed	to	169
on a committee		132
be beneath committing a crime		48
in common	with	91
on compact disc		130
of a company	of	111
be comparable	to	168
be comparable	with	196
to compare	to	168
to compare	with	196

to compare something with	196
compared to	168
in comparison with	91
in comparison	94
out of compassion	145
with compassion	191–192
to compensate someone for	71
in compensation for	91
to compete for	70
to compete with	193–194
in competition with	91
be in competition with	193–194
to complain about	11
to complain of	115
a complaint about	11
about complete	13
in compliance	92–93
in compliance with	194–195
to comply with	194–195
be composed of	115
beyond comprehension	53
be comprised of	115
at the computer	37
on the computer	130
on the computer	130
in computers	90
to concentrate on	137

against a concept		23
be concerned	about	12
be concerned	with	192–193
at a concert		35
in concert		88
in concert	with	194–195
in conclusion		94
in conclusion		94–95
toward a conclusion		175
to concur	with	194–195
in concurrence	with	194–195
in condition		88–89
get into condition		105
on condition		134–135
to conduct	for someone	72
one's conduct	toward	174
at a conference		35
in confidence		89
to confine	to	171
in confinement		92
in conflict	with	91
in conflict		92
to conflict	with	193–194
be in conflict	with	193–194
be confused	about	12
be confusing	to	165–166
in confusion		88–89

in confusion		92–93
to congratulate someone	for	71
congratulations	on	133
in conjunction	with	91
be connected	to	169
in connection	with	91
be conscientious	of	118
be conscious	of	117
in consent		92–93
to consent	to	166–167
be considerate	to	167
be considerate	toward	174
under consideration		178
under construction		178
to contact	about	12
in contact	with	91
through a contact		161
a container	of	112
in contempt		92–93
be content	with	192
have a contest	with	193–194
out of context		144
in a continent		84
under a contract		178
a contract	with	194–195
on the contrary		137
in contrast		94

to contrast	with	196
to contribute something	toward	175
in control		92
out of control		144
have control	over	152
under the control	of	178
under control		178
a conversation	about	11
in conversation		94
to converse	with	190
to cook	for	69
to cook	to perfection	169–170
be cool	toward	174
to cooperate	in	95
to cooperate	with	194–195
in cooperation	with	91
in cooperation	with	194–195
the coordinator	of	111
of copper		115
to copy	from	79
be cordial	to	167
in a corner		84
in a corner		92
on the corner		126
through the correspondence		159–160
the cost	of	112–113
in costume		89–90

of cotton		115
on the council		132
to count	on	129
to count	out	146–148
to count	up to	184–188
to count someone	in	97
at a counter		35
across the country		18
in a country		84
of a country		111
all over the country		153
through the country		158
all through the country		159–160
within a country		199
within a county		199
a couple	of	113
with courage		191–192
off course		121
on course		134
through (with) a course		159
on the court		126
the cover	to	169
to cover	up	184–188
to cover something	with	193
be covered	in	95
to crack	down (on)	64
to craft something	out of	144–145

be crafted	from	81
to cram	into	104
to cram something	with	193
to crash	against	23
to crash	into	104
the crash	of	114
to crawl	about	13
to crawl	across	18
to crawl	back to	42
to crawl	out of	143
to crawl	all over the...	153
be crazy	about	12
like crazy		107
be crazy	of someone	118
to create	for	69
to create something	out of	144–145
be created	from	81
on credit		130
a credit	to	165–166
be up a creek		184
to creep	up	182
on the crew		132
with the crime		196–197
to criticize someone	for	71
to cross	over	152
to cross something	out	143
be crucial	for	71

be crucial	to	165–166
be crude	of someone	118
be cruel	of someone	118
be cruel	to	167
above cruelty		16
out of cruelty		145
on a cruise		130
a cruise	to	164
to cruise	up	183
to cruise	with	195
to crush	against	23
have a crush	on	136
to cry	about	11
to cry	for	70
to cry	in	92–93
the cry	of	114
a cry	of	114–115
to cry	over	153
to cry	(all) through	160
with a cry		191–192
be crying	with	196–197
of crystal		115
of a culture		111
by the cup		56
a cure	for	69
a cure	for	70
be cured	of	116–117



out of curiosity		145
in curls		89–90
against the current		24
with the current		195
be curt	with	191–192
through the curtains		158
be customary	for someone	71
through customs		158
to cut	back (on)	43
to cut	down	63
to cut	in/into	87
to cut	into	104–105
to cut	off	120
to cut	with	193
to cut something	down	63
to cut something	out	143
to cut something	with	193
to cut ties	with	195
something/nothing cute	about	13
at a dance		35
to dance	for	69
to dance	with	190
to dance something	with	190
be dancing	with	196–197
in danger		88–89
get into danger		105
out of danger		145

in the dark		92
out of date		144
be up to date		184
towards dawn		176
day after day		21
by day		57
by the day		56
a day	of	116
(all) through the day		160
over the next few days		153
a dearth	of	116
in death		85
on one's death		133
with the death	of	196–197
a debate	against	23
a debate	among	29
at a debate		35
in debate	with	91
in a debate	with	91
a debate	on	132
against one's debt		24
in debt		92
go into debt		105
in a decade		85
of the decade		111
to decide	between	51
a decline	in	95

a decrease	in	95
with the decrease	in	196–197
to dedicate something	to	165
to dedicate something	with	195
be dedicated	to	169
in dedication	of	91
a dedication	to	165
in one's deeds		85
in defeat		92–93
in defeat		85
in deference	to	89
in defiance		92–93
to delete something	from	79
in delight		92–93
of delight		114–115
to the delight	of	165–166
to one's delight		165–166
with delight		191–192
be delighted	for someone	72
be delighted	with	192
be delightful	of someone	118
to deliver	to	165
in demand		92
on demand		135–136
one's demeanor	toward	174
on one's departure		133
with the departure	of	196–197

to depend	on	129
to depend	on	137–138
be dependent	on	129
go into a depression		105
a depth	of	112–113
to derive	from	79
of a descent		111
to describe	to	165
to design	for	69
a desire	of	117
at a desk		35
in desolation		92–93
in despair		88–89
in detail		88
through determination		161
a detriment	to	165–166
be detrimental	to	165–166
be developed	from	81
to devote	to	165
be devoted	to	167
on the diamond (baseball)		126
the dictator	of	111
under a dictator		178
under the dictatorship	of	178
in a dictionary		84
to die	of	116–117
to die	on someone	137

off one's diet		121
on a diet		134–135
to differ	from	80
to differ	with	193–194
be different	from	79
to dig	with	193
to dig something	with	193
of dignity		118
in dimes		90
at dinner		35
for dinner		72
over dinner		153
(all) through dinner		160
to dinner		164
towards dinnertime		176
in dire straits		88–89
to direct	for someone	72
to direct someone	toward	174
in this/that direction		87
under the direction	of	178
the directions	for	70
the directions	to	168
at a disadvantage		39
to disagree	with	193–194
a disagreement	about	11
have a disagreement	with	193–194
be disappointed	with	192

in disappointment		92–93
to one's disappointment		165–166
in disarray		88–89
in disaster		88–89
to one's discomfort		165–166
at a discount		38
a discount	on	132
a discredit	to	165–166
at one's discretion		40
with discretion		191–192
to discuss something	among	29
a discussion	about	11
a discussion	on	132
under discussion		178
in a discussion	with	190
in disdain		92–93
with disdain		191–192
in disgrace		88–89
in disgrace		92–93
to one's disgrace		165–166
in disguise		89–90
in disgust		92–93
to the disgust	of	117
to one's disgust		165–166
above dishonesty		16
on disk		130
in dismay		92–93

in disobedience		92–93
in disorder		88–89
on display		134
by disposition		57
in dispute	with	91
be disrespectful	of	117
in dissent		92–93
to dissociate something	from	79
at a distance		38
be distasteful	to	165–166
to distinguish something	from	80
with distress		191–192
to distribute	among	29
to distribute	to	165
a distrust	of	117
a disturbance	to	165–166
be disturbing	to	165–166
to dive	off	120
to divide	in/into	87
to divide	into	104–105
to divide	up	184–188
to do	about	11
to do	for	69
to do someone	in	97
to do something	for	73
to do something	over	154

to do well	by someone	58
under a doctor		178
in dollars		90
to donate	to	165
to donate something	toward	175
a donation	to	164
about done		13
be done	by	56
through a door		158
door to door		168
the door	to	169
out of doors		145–146
to dote	on	137
in doubt		88–89
without a doubt		201
down	with	197
by the dozen		56
by the dozens		57
to drag	around	31
in drag		89–90
to drag	on	133
to drag something	up	182
to drape something	on	128–129
to drape something	over	152
to draw	around	30
to draw	up	183
to draw	with	193



to draw something	in	87
to draw something	with	193
in a drawer		84
through the drawers		159–160
in dread		88–89
be dreadful	to	167
to dream	about	11
to dream	of	115
to dream	up	183
in one's dreams		85
in a dress		89–90
to dress	up	184–188
to drift	with	195
to drink	out of	143
to drink	with	190
to drink something	with	190
over drinks		153
to drip	onto	140
to drip something	on	127
to drip something	onto	140
to drive	across	18
to drive	against	24
to drive	around	30
to drive	around	31
to drive	back to	42
to drive	back from	42
to drive	down	63

go for a drive		75
to drive	for someone	72
to drive	from	79
to drive	away from	79
in drive		92
to drive	into	104
to drive	off	120
to drive	on	133
to drive	out of	143
to drive	over	152
to drive	all over the . . .	153
to drive	to	164
to drive	to distraction	169–170
to drive	to insanity	169–170
to drive	up	183
to drive	with	195
to drive something	into	104
to drive something	off	120
to drive something	out of	143
to drive something	over	152
to drop	by	58
by the drop		56
to drop	in	97
to drop	in (on)	97
to drop	off	122–123
to drop	out of	146–148
to drop something	by	58

to drop something	in	84
to drop something	in	87
to drop something	on	127
to drop something	onto	140
be drowning	in	95
off drugs		121
to drum	up	183
be drunk	from	81–82
to dry something	with	193
in duplicate		88
towards dusk		176
off duty		121
on duty		134
to dwell	on	137
to dwell	over	152
each	of	113
be eager	for	70
an ear	for	74
at the earliest		39
in earnest		89
be up to one's ears	in	184
on earth		126
at ease		37
be easy	on	137
to eat	out	146–148
to eat	out of	143
to eat	with	190

to eat	with	193
to eat something	with	190
to eat something	with	193
on edge		134
on the edge		134–135
on the edge	of	127
for all one's education		74
with all one's education		196–197
in the eighties		85
either	of	113
of elation		114–115
to elect	as	34
on electricity		130
to eliminate something	from	79
an embargo	on	132
to one's embarrassment		165–166
to empathize	with	194–195
an encumbrance	on	132
in an encyclopedia		84
at the end		36
in the end		94
on the end	of	127
to end	with	195
toward an ending		175
against an enemy		23
get up (enough) energy		183
be engaged	to	169

in English		88
the enjoyment	of	117
enough	of	113
in entertainment		90
with enthusiasm		191–192
through an entrance		158
be envious	of	117
to erase something	from	79
to erase something	with	193
to err	on	137
through an error		161
the essays	of	111
be even	with	196
in the evening		85
towards evening		176
on nice evenings		129
evidence	on	132
the evil	of	118
through (with) exams		159
be excellent	at	38
to exchange something	for	73
in an exchange	with	91
be excited	about	12
the excitement	of	117
of excitement		114–115
to exclaim	in	92–93
be exclusive	to	169

on an excursion		130
for exercise		71
of exercise		116
be exhausted	from	81–82
something/nothing exotic	about	13
to expel someone	for	71
to expel someone	from	79
for all one's experience		74
with experience		195
for all one's expertise		74
to explain	to	165
an explanation	to	164
to expound	on	132
with an expression		191–192
to extend	to	164
on the exterior	of	127
an eye	for	74–75
in the eye		92
under the eye	of	178
of fabric		115
through the fabric		158
to fabricate something	out of	145
about face	about	14
be face to face	(with)	170–171
to face	up to	184–188
in fact		94–95
at a factory		35

on the faculty		132
without fail		201
after one's failure		20
to faint	on someone	137
in fairness		89
of a faith		111
of faith		118
be faithful	to	167
to fall	down	63
to fall	for	76
to fall	into	104
to fall	off	120
to fall	on	130–131
to fall	on	127
to fall	onto	140
to fall	out (of)	143
to fall	over	154
to fall	through	161
to fall	to	164
to fall	out (with)	195
to fall asleep	on	137
something/nothing familiar	about	13
in a family		85
of a family		111
keep within the family		199
be famous	for	71
by far		57

something/nothing fascinating	about	13
be fascinating	to	165–166
in fashion		88
out of fashion		144
to fashion something	out of	144–145
be fashioned	from	81
to fasten	around	30
to fasten	with	193
be fat	from	81–82
through the fault	of	161
with all one's faults		197
a favor	to	165
at the fax machine		37
for fear	of	75
in fear		88–89
a fear	of	117
of fear		114–115
out of fear		145
with fear		196–197
with fear		191–192
be feared	for	71
the feel	of	112–113
the feel	of	114
to feel	up to	184–188
with feeling		191–192
one's feelings	toward	174
in feet		91



on the fence		126
on the fence		134–135
of festivity		116
few	of	113
a few	of	113
in a few words		88
on the field		126
on the field		126
all over the field		153
on a field trip		130
in fifties		90
in the fifties		85
to fight	against	23
to fight	against	24
to fight	among	29
to fight	for	70
in a fight	with	91
to fight	over	153
to fight	with	193–194
to figure something	out	146–148
in a file		84
through the files		159–160
to fill	in (for)	97
to fill in	for someone	72
to fill something	in	97
to fill something	out	146–148
to fill something	up	184–188

to fill something	with	193
on film		130
in the final analysis		94–95
to find	out (about)	11
to find something	out	146–148
to find something	under	177
to find something	under	178
to fine someone	for	71
about finished		13
be finished	with	195
on fire		134
at first		36
something/nothing fishy	about	13
in fives		90
be flexible	with	191–192
on a flight		130
a flight	to	164
to flirt	around	31
to float	over	151
to float	with	195
to float something	over	151
on the floor		126
all over the floor		153
against the flow		24
with the flow		195
to fly	around	30
to fly	back to	42

to fly	back from	42
to fly	from	79
to fly	into	104
to fly	over	151
to fly	to	164
to fly	toward	174
to fly something	in	87
to fly something	over	151
out of focus		144
in the fog		86–87
through the fog		158
in foggy weather		86–87
in a folder		84
in folds		90
to follow something	through	161
be fond	of	117
on food		130
to fool	around (with)	31
on foot		128
in the game of football		93
for	money	71
against a force		23
against the force		24
to force something	on	136
to force something	through	158
be beneath forgery		48
to forget	about	11

a form	of	112
be formed	of	115
be forthcoming	with	191–192
at a forum		35
be found	with	191
on all fours		128
be frank	with	191–192
in a fraternity		85
for free		73
down a freeway		63
to freeze	to death	169–170
through a friend		161
be friendly	to	167
be friendly	toward	174
be friendly	with	191–192
in friendship		89
a friendship	with	194–195
from front	to back	80
to frost something	with	193
to frown	at	36
with a frown		191–192
be frustrated	with	192
the frustration	of	117
of frustration		114–115
through frustration		161
on fuel		130
in full		88

be fuming	with	196–197
for fun		71
in fun		89
like fun		107
of fun		116
at a function		35
at a funeral		35
through a funnel		158
something/nothing funny	about	13
be furnished	with	191
in the future		85
to gain weight	on	130
by the gallon		56
at a game		35
off one's game		121
(all) through the game		160
all through the garden		159–160
on gas		130
out of gas		144
through a gate		158
to gaze	into	104
in gear		92
of a gender		111
in general		94–95
under a general		178
through the generosity	of	161
be generous	with	191–192

of a genus		111
to get	about	14
to get	ahead (of)	26
to get	along with	27
to get	around	31
to get	around to	31
to get	back from	42
to get	back	43
to get	back at	43
to get	back to	43
to get	by	58
to get	in	97–98
to get	in	87
to get	into	104
to get	off	120
to get	off	122–123
to get	on	138
to get	on	127
to get	on	128
to get	out (of)	146–148
to get	out of	143
to get	over	152
to get	through (with)	159
to get	to	164
to get	up	184–188
to get	along with	194–195
to get	on with	197

to get away	from	79
to get away	with	197
to get sick	on	137
to get someone	back	43
to get someone	for	71
to get something back	to/from	42
to get something	across to	19
to get something	across (to)	24
to get something	for	69
to get something	from	79
to get something	in	84
to get something	in	97–98
to get something	into	104
to get something	off	120
to get something	off	121
to get something	off	122–123
to get something	on	128
to get something	on	138
to get something	out	143
to get something	out (of)	143
to get something	up	184–188
be getting	at	40
a gift	for	69
a gift	to	164
a gift	to	165
to give	in	98
to give	up (on)	184–188

to give something	back (to/from)	42
to give something	out	143
to give something	to	165
to give something	to	165
to give something	toward	175
to give something	up	184–188
be glad	about	12
to glare	at	36
of glass		115
through the glass		158
through glasses		161
with glee		196–197
with glee		191–192
to glue something	on	127
to glue something	to	167
be glued	to	167
to go	about	13
to go	across	18
to go	after	20
to go	against	23
to go	against	24
to go	ahead	26
to go	ahead	26
to go	around (with)	31
to go	back to	42
to go	by	59
to go	down	63



to go	down	63
to go	for	76
to go	in for	76
to go	for	70
to go	out for	71
to go	in	87
to go	into	104
to go	off	120
to go	on	133
to go	on	128
to go	out with	146–148
to go	out (of)	143
to go	over	152
to go	through (with)	159
to go	through	159–160
to go	to	164
to go	toward	174
to go	toward	175
to go	up	182
to go	up	183
to go	with	190
to go	with	195
to go	with	196
to go away	in	92–93
to go out	for	70
to go quiet	on	137
toward a goal		175

of gold		115
in the game of golf		93
something/nothing good	about	13
be good	at	38
for good		74
be good	for someone	71
in good	with	91
be good	of	118
be good enough	for someone	71
in good hands	with	92
in good weather		86–87
to goof	around	31
to goof	off	122–123
to gossip	about	11
through gossip		161
above gossiping		16
be beneath gossiping		48
in government		90
to grab	at	36
to grab something	out of	143
up for grabs		72–73
with grace		191–192
be gracious	to	167
be gracious	toward	174
to graduate	from	79
a graduate	of	111–112
for one's graduation		72

against the grain		25
through the grapevine		161
be grateful	for	71
be grateful	to	166–167
be gratifying	to	165–166
with gratitude		191–192
be great	at	38
through greed		161
be greedy	for	70
with a greeting		191–192
in grief		92–93
to grieve	over	153
to grin	at	36
to grind	to a pulp	169–170
to grind	to dust	169–170
to groan	about	11
a groan	of	114–115
on the ground		126
on solid ground		126
in a group		90
in a group		85
of a group		111
a group	of	115
in groups		90
in groups	of a number	93
to grow	up	184–188
to growl	at	36

the growl	of	114
to grumble	at	37
with a grumble		191–192
with a grunt		191–192
to guard	against	24
on guard		134
to guess	at	37
with the guests		196–197
a guide	to	168
to guide someone	toward	174
the gush	of	114
to gush	over	153
in a hall		84
in/into halves		87
hand–in– hand		89
off hand		122–123
on hand		134–135
on the other hand		137
to hand over something	for	154
to hand something	out among	29
to hand something	in (to)	87
to hand something	out (to)	143
to hand something	over (to)	154
to hand something	to	165
lay hands	on	137
on one's hands and knees		128
with a handshake		191–192

to hang	above	16
to hang	against	23
to hang	around with	32
to hang	around	31
to hang	on	128–129
to hang	out with	146–148
to hang	over	151
to hang	up (on)	184–188
to hang one's head	in	92–93
to hang something	on	128–129
to hang something	over	151
to hang something	over	152
to hang something	up	184–188
for happiness		71
in happiness		92–93
the happiness	of	117
of happiness		114–115
of happiness		116
with happiness		196–197
with happiness		191–192
be happy	about	12
be happy	for someone	72
be happy	with	192
to harass	about	12
be hard	on	137
from hard work		81
to hark	back to	42

be harmful	to	165–166
to harmonize	with	194–195
in harmony		88
in harmony	with	91
in harmony	with	194–195
to harp	on	137
in a hat		89–90
be hateful	of	118
the hatred	of	117
with hatred		191–192
to have it	out with	193–194
to have something	on	128
to have something	over	154–155
to have something	over	152
to head	for	73
the head	of	111
be head	over heels	154
be over one's head		151
to head	toward	174
to head	toward	175
in bad/good health		88–89
in (the field of) health		85
be healthy	for	71
be healthy	from	81–82
to heap something	on	136
to heap something	with	193
to hear	about	11

to hear	from	79
to hear	of	115
out of one's hearing		145
within hearing		199
sick at heart		37
in one's heart		94–95
in the heat		86–87
to heave	against	23
to heave something	up	182
down at the heels		39
the height	of	112–113
under height		177
one's height is	against	24
in a helicopter		84
beyond help		53
help	for	69
to help	in	95
through help		161
a help	to	165–166
to help	toward	175
to help	with	194–195
to help someone	(all) through	160
be helpful	for someone	71
be helpful	to someone	165–166
be helpful	with	191–192
from here		81
the hero	of	111

the heroine	of	111
to hide	from	82
to hide	under	177
to hide something	from	79
to hide something	under	177
in the game of hide-and-seek		93
in high heels		89–90
down a highway		63
off the highway		120
on the highway		126
on the highway		127
a highway	to	164
up the highway		182
to hike	to	164
to hike	toward	174
on the hill		126
to hint	at	37
for hire		72
the hiss	of	114
to hit	against	23
to hit	at	36
to hit	in	92
to hit it	off	121
to hit something	over	152
to hit something	with	193
in the game of hockey		93
to hold	above	16



to hold	against	23
on hold		134
to hold	to	171
to hold	to	167
to hold	up	184–188
to hold something	over one's head	151
to hold something	on	127
to hold something	over	151
to hold something	up	184–188
through a hole		158
for the holidays		72
over the holidays		153
at home		35
be honest	with	191–192
on a honeymoon		130
to the honk	of	169
in honor	of	91
of honor		118
on the honor roll		132
to honor someone	for	71
to hoot	at	37
to hop	off	120
to hop	on	127
to hop	onto	140
to hop	out of	143
to hop	over	152
to hope	for	70

in hordes		93
on the horizon		126
to one's horror		165–166
be hospitable	to	167
be hospitable	toward	174
at a hospital		35
be hostile	to	167
in hot weather		86–87
at a hotel		35
hour after hour		21
by the hour		56
within the hour		199
over the next few hours		153
at a house		35
on the house		135
all over the house		153
all through the house		159–160
house to house		168
to hover	over	151
to howl	at	36
the howl	of	114
with a hug		191–192
to hum	along with	27
the hum	of	114
to the hum	of	169
in the humidity		86–87
with humility		191–192

by the hundreds		57
in hundreds		90
in hundreds		93
be hungry	for	70
in a hurry		88–89
to hurry	up	184–188
be hurt	in	92
be hurtful	to	165–166
the hush	of	114
go into hysterics		105
to ice something	with	193
against an idea		23
behind an idea		45
an idea	for	69
an idea	for	70
be far from ideal		68
the ideas	of	111
be ignorant	of	118
be ignorant	of	115–116
to ignore someone	(all) through	160
of that ilk	of	111
(all) through one's illness		160
be impatient	for	70
be impatient	with	191–192
be important	for	71
be important	to	169
be important	to	165–166

be impossible	for someone	71
be impressed	with	192
under the impression		178
the improvement	in	95
in inches		91
on one's income		130
be inconsiderate	of	117
be inconsiderate	to	167
an increase	in	95
with the increase	in	196–197
be indebted	to	166–167
with indifference		191–192
be indignant	at	37
one's inexperience is	against	24
be inferior	to	168
under the influence	of	178
with all one's influence		196–197
to inform someone	of	115
information	for	69
an inhabitant	of	111–112
be inhospitable	toward	174
in ink		88
to insert something	in	84
on the inside	of	127
to install something	over	151
on instinct		131
the instructions	for	70

the instructions	to	168
in (the field of) insurance		90
of integrity		118
with all one's intelligence		196–197
of good/bad intentions		118
be interested	in	95
something/nothing interesting	about	13
on the interior	of	127
on the Internet		130
on the Internet		135
through an intersection		158
to introduce	to	165
to invest	in	95
under investigation		178
an invoice	for	73
be involved	in	90
be involved	with	192–193
of iron		115
at the ironing board		37
be irresponsible	of someone	118
off the island		120
at it		37
out of it		145–146
in italics		88
the jacket	to	169
in jail		84
in jail		92

to jail		164
in jeans		89–90
by the job		56
a job	for	69
to jog	along	27
a joke	about	11
to joke	about	11
in journalism		90
on a journey		130
the joy	of	117
of joy		114–115
with joy		196–197
with joy		191–192
to judge	between	51
to jump	about	13
to jump	around	31
to jump	back to	42
to jump	in	87
to jump	off	120
to jump	on	127
to jump	onto	140
to jump	out of	143
to jump	over	152
to jump	up	182
within a jurisdiction		199
on the jury		132
of jute		115

to keep	above	16
to keep	against	23
to keep	at it	37
to keep	from	81–82
to keep	in	98
to keep	off	121
to keep	on	133
to keep	on ____ing	133
to keep	out (of)	146–148
to keep	up (with)	184–188
to keep alive	on	130
to keep away	from	79
to keep someone	from	82
to keep something	from	79
to keep something	on	128
to keep something	up	184–188
to keep something	with	190
to key	in	98
the key	to	168
the key	to	169
to kick	in	92
to kick	in	98
to kick	off	122–123
to kick somebody	out	143
to kick someone	around	32
for kicks		71
to kill something	off	122–123

in kilos		91
be kind	about	12
be kind	of someone	118
a kind	of	112
be kind	to	167
after one's kindness		20
out of kindness		145
through kindness		161
with kindness		191–192
under a king		178
with a kiss		191–192
in a kitchen		84
a knack	for	74
to kneel	beside	49
the knob	to	169
to knock	against	23
to knock	in	92
to knock	on	127
to knock someone	out	146–148
to knock something	off	122–123
to know	about	11
to know something	about	11
to know something	from	80
for all one's knowledge		74
be known	for	71
a lack	of	116
be lacking	in	95



on land		126
in (the field of) landscaping		90
by and large		57
at last		36
for later		74
at the latest		39
to laugh	about	11
to laugh	at	36
to laugh	at	37
to laugh	(all) through	160
the laughter	of	114
above the law		17
against the law		23
in (the field of) law		90
within the law		199
on the lawn		126
to lay	off	121
to lay someone	off	122–123
to lay something	against	23
to lay something	in	84
to lay something	in	87
to lay something	on	128–129
to lead someone	toward	174
a leader	of	111
to lean	against	23
to lean	on	128
to lean	over	151

to lean	toward	175
to learn	of	115
at least		39
of leather		115
to leave	for	73
to leave	from	79
on leave		134
to leave	with	190
to leave something	out	143
to leave something	with	190
to leave something	with	190
a lecture	about	11
at a lecture		35
in a lecture		84
to leer	at	36
on the left	of	127
in the leg		92
to lend	to	165
at length		36
a length	of	112–113
through lenses		161
a lesson	for	70
to let someone	down	64
a letter	for	69
a letter	to	164
through the letters		159–160
be level	with	196

the lid	to	169
to lie	about	11
to lie	against	23
to lie	around	31
to lie	on	128
to lie	over	152
to lie	under	177
to lie (down)	beside	49
in lieu	of	91
for life		74
in life		85
(all) through one's life		160
in light	of	94–95
through a light		158
a limit	to	171
under the limit		177
within the limit(s)		199
off limits		122–123
to limp	across	18
to limp	off	120
in a line		90
in line		90
on line		134–135
on the line		134–135
out of line		145
to line	up	184–188
in lines		90

on the list		132
to listen	to	166–167
to listen	up	184–188
from listening		81
very little	about	11
little by little		57
little	of	113
a little	of	113
to live	across from	18
to live	off	122
to live	on	130
to live	on	133
to live	over	152
to live	through	159
to live	with	190
a load	of	112
load something	on	136
to load something	on	127
a loaf	of	112
against one's loan		24
on loan		134
be located	over	152
to lock up	against	24
to log	on	138
to long	for	70
to look	about	13
to look	after	22

to look	around	<a href="#">31</a>
to look	at	<a href="#">36</a>
to look	back on	<a href="#">42</a>
to look	back to	<a href="#">42</a>
to look	down on	<a href="#">64</a>
to look	for	<a href="#">70</a>
to look	in (on)	<a href="#">98</a>
to look	into	<a href="#">104</a>
to look	into	<a href="#">106</a>
to look	like	<a href="#">107</a>
to look	out (for)	<a href="#">146–148</a>
to look	over	<a href="#">151</a>
to look	over	<a href="#">152</a>
to look	all over the...	<a href="#">153</a>
to look	through	<a href="#">159–160</a>
to look	toward	<a href="#">174</a>
to look	up to	<a href="#">184–188</a>
with a look		<a href="#">191–192</a>
to look forward	to	<a href="#">172</a>
to look good	with	<a href="#">196</a>
to look something	over	<a href="#">154–155</a>
to look something	up	<a href="#">184–188</a>
to look up something	under	<a href="#">178</a>
to lose weight	on	<a href="#">130</a>
the loser	of	<a href="#">111</a>
a lot	of	<a href="#">113</a>
lots	of	<a href="#">113</a>

be lousy	at	38
in love		88–89
a love	of	117
out of love		145
with love		191–192
be in love	with	192
be loved	by	56
be loved	for	71
in lower case		88
be loyal	to	167
out of loyalty		145
to luck	out	146–148
out of luck		144
through luck		161
at lunch		35
for lunch		72
over lunch		153
(all) through lunch		160
to lunch		164
at a luncheon		35
towards lunchtime		176
to lurk	around	31
be above lying		16
be beneath lying		48
on the machine		130
be mad	about	12
like mad		107

be made	by	56
be made	from	81
be made	of	115
be made up	of	115
in a magazine		84
to mail	from	79
to mail something	out	143
to make	for	69
to make	of	112
to make	out	146–148
to make	up (with)	184–188
to make	up	184
to make a pass	at	36
to make a toast	to	165
to make do	on	130
to make something	for	73
to make something	out of	144–145
to make something	up	184–188
to make something	up to	184–188
in make-up		89–90
out of malice		145
at a mall		35
to manage	for someone	72
under the management	of	178
the manager	of	111
in a manner		89
after one's manners		20

many	of	113
to march	around	31
to march	on	133–134
to march	toward	174
in the marines		90
on the mark		134–135
on your mark		137
to mark something	down	64
to mark something	off	122–123
to mark something	up	184–188
be married	to	169
have a match	with	193–194
under the maximum		177
from May	to September	80–81
the mayor	of	111
under a mayor		178
as for me		34
(all) through the meal		160
be mean	about	12
be mean	of someone	118
be mean	to	167
be meaningful	to	165–166
above meanness		16
out of meanness		145
by all means		57
the measurement	of	112–113
in medicine		90



off one's medicine		121
of meditation		116
at a meeting		35
a member	of	111
a memo	to	164
a memorial	to	165
from memory		81
in memory	of	91
be menacing	toward	174
to mention	to	165
at one's mercy		39
in a mess		88–89
a message	for	69
of metal		115
in meters		91
a method	of	111
a method	of	115
on microfilm		130
through a microscope		161
towards mid-afternoon		176
in the middle	of	112
towards midnight		176
by a mile		57
in miles		91
within miles	of	199
in the military		90
in a million		87

make up one's mind		184
be mindful	of	117
under the minimum		177
within minutes		199
with mirth		196–197
through misinformation		161
to miss	out on	138
on a mission		130
through a mistake		161
to mix something	up (with)	184–188
to moan	about	11
a moan	of	114–115
at the moment		37
a moment	of	116
on Monday (or any day)		55
out of money		144
with all one's money		196–197
in monopoly		93
month after month		21
by the month		56
of the month		111
the month	of	116
(all) through the month		160
over the next few months		153
a monument	to	165
in a bad/good mood		88–89
to mope	around	31

of high/low morals		118
in the morning		85
(all) through the morning		160
on nice mornings		129
at most		39
most	of	113
on a motorcycle		128
in mourning		88–89
of mourning		116
to move	about	13
to move	across	18
to move	against	23
to move	against	24
to move	around	31
to move	back to	42
to move	back from	42
to move	down	63
to move	down	63
to move	in	87
to move	into	104
to move	off	120
to move	on	133
to move	onto	140
to move	to	164
to move	to tears	169–170
to move	toward	174
to move	up	182

with the move	to	196–197
to move away	from	79
to move something	into	104
to move something	off	120
to move something	onto	140
to move something	out	143
to move something	out of	143
to move something	up	182
to move something	with	193
a movie	about	11
at the movies		35
much	of	113
be above murder		16
be beneath murder		48
in music		88
music	of	111
the music	of	114
to the music	of	169
to nail	to	167
to nail something	over	151
to nail something	with	193
the name	of	112
to name someone	after	22
be nasty	about	12
one's nationality is	against	24
a native	of	111–112
by nature		58

for naught		75
in the navy		90
be necessary	for	71
a necessity	of	116
a need	for	70
in need		88–89
a need	of	116
a need	of	117
to need someone	for	70
through negligence		161
to negotiate	with	194–195
all through the neighborhood		159–160
be nervous	about	12
in a nest		84
in neutral		92
the news	about	11
news	for	69
on the news		133
in a newspaper		84
through a newspaper		161
be next	to	170–171
be nice	about	12
something/nothing nice	about	13
be nice	of someone	118
be nice	to	167
in nickels		90
night after night		21

at night		36
(all) through the night		160
on rainy nights		129
in the nineties		85
in no time		86
to nod	off	122–123
to nod one's head	in	92–93
the noise	of	114
to the noise	of	169
to nominate	as	34
to nominate someone	for	70
against a nomination		23
none	of	113
towards noon		176
under the norm		177
above normal		16
by a nose		57
a nose	for	74–75
in a notebook		84
through the notes		159–160
nothing	for	69
for nothing		73
be notorious	for	71
the novels	of	111
by now		56
in the nude		89–90
a nuisance	to	165–166

under a number		177
of nylon		115
be obedient	to	167
to object	to	166–167
an objection	to	166–167
be objective	about	12
be obligated	to	169
be obnoxious	to	165–166
an obstacle	to	168
to obtain	from	79
on occasion		129
on the occasion	of	133
against all odds		24
neither of		113
off	with	197
an offer	to	164
at an office		35
run for office	for	70
in an office		84
in an office		85
to the office		164
in oil		88
be an old hand	at	38
at once		36
for once		75
once and	for all	75
one by one		58

after one's own heart		21
beyond one's wildest dreams		53
in ones		90
beside oneself		49
(all) by oneself		57
be open	to	167
be open	with	191–192
to open something	with	193
to operate	for someone	72
in one's opinion		94–95
the opinion	of	111
with optimism		191–192
be optimistic	about	12
(all) through the ordeal		160
in order		90
in order	to	91
on order		134
out of order		145
against orders		23
on the orders	of	131
under orders		178
out of the ordinary		144
of an organization	of	111
by the ounce		56
in ounces		91
after one's outburst		20
on an outing		130



on the outside	of	127
on the outskirts	of	127
on one's own		134–135
to pack something	with	193
by the package		56
a package	of	112
on the page	of	127
on page one, two, etc.		126
in pain		88–89
a pain	in one's	92
a pain	in the neck	92
in pain		92–93
to paint	with	193
to paint something	over	152
to paint something	with	193
to paint something	with	193
the paintings	of	111
beyond the pale		53
of paper		115
on paper		130
a paper	on	132
through the papers		159–160
be on a par	with	196
at a parade		35
be parallel	to	170–171
be parallel	with	196
at a park		35

in park		92
through the park		158
to the park		164
at a parking lot		35
on parole		134
the part	to	169
to part	with	195
to part company	with	195
to participate	in	95
in particular		94–95
a partnership	with	194–195
in partnership	with	194–195
in parts		87
into parts		104–105
at a party		35
to pass	on something	11
to pass	out	146–148
to pass	to	165
to pass out	among	29
to pass someone	over	154–155
to pass someone	over	154–155
to pass something	in	87
to pass something	on	138
to pass something	out	143
to pass something	up	184–188
through a passage		158
out of passion		145

in the past		85
out of the past		145–146
to paste	to	167
to paste something	on	127
down a path		63
on the path		126
a path	to	164
up the path		182
be patient	with	191–192
on the patio		126
a pattern	for	70
a pattern	of	112
the paucity	of	116
to pay someone	for	71
to pay something/someone	back	42
behind in payments		45
on the payroll		132
at peace		37
for peace		71
something/nothing peculiar	about	13
in pencil		88
in pennies		90
the people	of	111–112
about perfect		13
be far from perfect		68
to perform	for	69
(all) through the performance		160

a period	of	116
through a periscope		161
be above perjury		16
be beneath perjury		48
be perpendicular	to	170–171
to persist	in	95
in person		89
to pertain	to	169
be pertinent	to	169
be pessimistic	about	12
to petition	for	70
a petition	to	164
to pick	as	34
to pick	at	40
to pick	between	51
to pick	off	120
to pick	on	137
to pick	on	138
to pick	up	184–188
to pick something	out	146–148
to pick something	over	154–155
to pick something	up	184–188
a picture	of	114
by the piece		56
a piece	of	112
in pieces		87
into pieces		104–105

in a pile		90
pile something	on	136
in piles		90
to pin	to	167
by the pint		56
through a pipe		158
have pity	on	136
out of pity		145
to place	above	16
to place	against	23
from one place	to another	80–81
in place		84
out of place		144
all over the place		153
place to place		168
to place something	in	84
to place something	in	87
to place something	into	104
to place something	over	151
to place something	over	152
to place something	under	177
against a plan		23
behind a plan		45
a plan	for	69
to plan	for	73
a plan	for	70
to plant something	with	193

a plaque	to	165
of plastic		115
a plate	of	112
of platinum		115
to play	about	11
to play	against	23
to play	along with	27
to play	among	29
to play	around	31
at a play		35
to play	for	69
to play	like	107
to play	(all) through	160
(all) through the play		160
to play	with	190
to play a game	with	190
all over the playground		153
the plays	of	111
to plead	for	70
be pleasant	to	167
be pleased	for someone	72
be pleased	with	192
be pleasing	to	165–166
for pleasure		71
the pleasure	of	117
with pleasure		191–192
plenty	of	113

behind a plot		45
to plow something	with	193
the poems	of	111
in poetry		88
the poetry	of	111
beside the point		49
to point	toward	174
from one's point of view		81
to point something	out to	146–148
to poke	about	13
to poke	in	92
under a policy		178
be polite	to	167
in politics		90
in the game of polo		93
of polyester		115
in ponytails		89–90
be poor	in	95
to pop	up	182
be popular	for	71
for all one's popularity		74
on the porch		126
in portions		87
from a position		81
be possible	for someone	71
to pounce	on	127
by the pound		56

to pound	on	127
in pounds		91
to pour something	in	87
to pour something	into	104
to pour something	on	127
to pour something	out of	143
to pour something	over	152
in power		92
have power	over	152
with all one's power		196–197
at a practice		35
for practice		72
for practice		71
in practice		94
out of practice		144
a practitioner	of	111
in praise	of	91
to praise someone	for	71
to pray	about	11
to pray	for	70
of prayer		116
in one's prayers		85
against the precepts		23
be precious	to	165–166
be predicated	on	129
to prefer	to	166–167
be preferable	to	168



be preferable	to	165–166
a preference	for	75
on the premise	of	131
be prepared	for	70
in one's presence		89
at present		36
a present	for	69
a present	to	164
to present	to	165
a present	to	165
to preside	over	152
under the presidency	of	178
the president	of	111
under a president		178
to press	on	133
to press	to	167
put pressure	on	137
to prevent someone	from	82
to prey	on	137
at a price		38
the price	of	112–113
with pride		191–192
under a principal		178
against the principles		23
in print		88
in private		89
with the problems		196–197

with all one's problems		197
by profession		58
a professor	of	111
under a professor		178
a program	about	11
at a program		35
a program	for	70
behind a project		45
a project	for	69
a project	for	70
with a promise		191–192
be promised	to	169
against a proposal		23
a proposal	to	164
at the prospect	of	36
to protect	against	24
to protect something	from	79
be proud	of	117
be proud	of	115–116
be provided	with	191
in public		89
in publishing		90
to pull	against	23
to pull	back to	42
to pull	down	63
to pull	into	104
to pull	off	120

to pull	over	154–155
to pull a gun/knife	on	133
to pull something	in	87
to pull something	off	120
to pull something	off	122–123
to pull something	out of	143
to pull something	over	154–155
to pull something	over	152
to pull something	through	158
to pull something	toward	174
to punch	in	92
to punish someone	for	71
for purchase		72
on purpose		131
to push	against	23
to push	back to	42
to push	down	63
to push	for	75
to push	into	104
to push	to the limits	169–170
to push	toward	175
to push something	in	84
to push something	in	87
to push something	off	120
to push something	on	136
to push something	out of	143
to push something	through	158

to push something	toward	174
to push something	under	177
to put	above	16
to put	against	23
to put	around	30
be put	out	145–146
to put	up with	197
to put something	back	43
to put something	by	59
to put something	down	64
to put something	in	84
to put something	in	87
to put something	into	104
to put something	off	122–123
to put something	on	128
to put something	on	136
to put something	on	127
to put something	out	143
to put something	over	152
to put something	under	177
to put something	with	190
to put together	from	81
to puzzle	over	153
for all one's qualifications		74
to quarrel	with	193–194
have a quarrel	with	193–194
by the quart		56

in quarters		90
to question	about	11
a question	for	69
in question		94–95
a question	to	164
with a question		191–192
of quiet		116
to race	around	30
to race	back to	42
of a race	of	111
a race	to	164
to race	up	182
in the game of racquetball		93
on the radio		135
in a rage		88–89
with rage		196–197
a raid	on	133–134
in the rain		86–87
to rain	on	127
with the rain		196–197
in rainy weather		86–87
to ram something	in	87
within range		199
to rat	on	137
of rayon		115
out of reach		144
within reach		199

to react	in	92–93
to react	to	166–167
after one's reaction		20
in reaction		92–93
a reaction	to	166–167
to read	about	11
to read	on	133
to read	to	165
to read something	over	154
at a reading		35
of reading		116
about ready		13
be ready	for	70
by the ream		56
to rebel	at	37
a receipt	for	73
on receipt		135–136
to receive	from	79
to receive something	through	158
a recipe	for	70
to recommend	to	165
on the recommendation	of	131
on reconnaissance		131
off the record		122–123
on record		130
on record		134
through the records		159–160

through red tape		159
of reflection		116
on reflection		135–136
with regard		191–192
to register	for	70
against the regulations		23
to reimburse someone	for	71
to rejoice	at	37
to relate	to	166–167
be related	to	169
a relation	to	166–167
a relationship	with	194–195
for relaxation		71
to release something	from	79
be relevant	to	169
in relief		92–93
of relief		114–115
to relieve someone	of	116–117
against a religion		23
of a religion	of	111
to rely	on	129
a remark	to	165
to remind someone	about	12
to remind someone	of	115
be reminiscent	of	115
to remove something	from	79
for rent		72

to rent something	for	73
be repentant	of	117
be repentant	of	115–116
to reply	to	166–167
a reply	to	166–167
to report	about	11
a report	on	132
to report	on	132
to reprimand someone	for	71
be repulsive	to	165–166
by reputation		58
a request	for	73
on request		131
a request	to	164
to one's rescue		165
in research		90
the research	on	132
in the reserves		90
to reside	over	152
a resident	of	111–112
show respect	for	75
out of respect		145
be respectful	of	117
be respectful	to	167
to respond	to	166–167
a response	to	166–167
be responsible	of someone	118



to rest	against	23
at rest		37
to rest	beside	49
of rest		116
to rest	on	128
to rest	under	177
at a restaurant		35
to restrict	to	171
a restriction	on	132
in return		94
in return		94–95
to return	to	164
at a reunion		35
to reveal	to	165
in reverse		92
in reverse		94–95
to revert	to	166–167
to reward someone	for	71
a rhythm	for	74
in rhythm		88
in rhythm	with	91
to the rhythm	of	169
be rich	in	95
be rich	in	95
be/get rid	of	116–117
to ride	across	18
to ride	around	30

to ride	down	63
to ride	on	128
to ride	to	164
to ride	with	195
be ridiculous	for someone	71
be right	about	12
about right		13
on the right	of	127
on the rink		126
to rip something	out of	143
to rise	to the occasion	164
at risk		37
on the river		127
down a road		63
off the road		120
on the road		134–135
on the road		126
on the road		127
a road	to	164
up the road		182
up the road		182
to the roar	of	169
be above robbing		16
to rock	to sleep	169–170
off one's rocker		121
on the rocks		126
to roll	down	63

to roll	off	120
on a roll		134–135
to roll	all over the . . .	153
to roll something	off	120
on roller blades		128
on the roof		126
room	for	75
in a room		84
up and down the room		184
be rough	on	137
to round	up	183
to round something	off	122–123
in a row		90
to row	up	183
in rows		90
be rude	about	12
be rude	of someone	118
in for a rude awakening		94
in ruins		88–89
to rule	over	152
against the rules		23
by the rules		56
within the rules		199
to run	about	13
to run	across	18
to run	across	19
to run	after	20

to run	against	24
to run	along	27
to run	along with	27
to run	around	30
to run	around with	32
to run	around	31
to run	back to	42
to run	back from	42
to run	down	63
to run	down	63
to go for a run		75
to run	for	70
to run	for someone	72
to run	in	87
to run	into	104
to run	into	104
to run	into	106
to run	off	120
to run	on	130
to run	on	133
to run	onto	140
to run	out of	143
to run	out of	144
to run	over	152
to run	all over the . . .	153
to run	to	164
to run	toward	174

to run	up	182
to run away	from	79
to run something	into the ground	104
to run something	by	59
to run something	down	64
to run something	off	120
to run something	up	184–188
the run-around		31
to rush	at	36
the rush	of	114
on sabbatical		131
in a sack		84
in sadness		92–93
of sadness		114–115
with sadness		191–192
on a safari		130
to sail	against	24
to sail	from	79
to sail	into	104
to sail	toward	174
to sail	up	183
to sail	with	195
on one's salary		130
for sale		72
a sale	on	132
on sale		134
beyond salvation		53

of sand		115
be sassy	to	167
to one's satisfaction		165–166
be satisfied	with	192
be satisfying	to	165–166
on Saturdays (et al.)		129
to save something	from	79
beyond saving		53
to saw	off	120
to say	about	11
to go without saying		201
a scarcity	of	116
to scare something	from	79
be scattered	about	12
behind the scenes		46
behind schedule		45
on schedule		134–135
behind a scheme		45
a scholarship	to	165
at school		35
in school		84
off school		121
through (with) school		159
to school		164
to scold someone	for	71
on a scooter		128
to scrape by	on	130

to scrape something	off	120
a scratch	in	92
to scream	about	11
to scream	for	70
to scream	in	92–93
be screaming	with	196–197
on the screen		126
to screw	to	167
to sculpt something	out of	144–145
to seal	against	24
to search	around	31
in search	of	91
in season		88
the season	of	116
out of season		144
to season something	with	193
on second thought		135–136
be seconded	to	169
a secret	for	69
the secret	to	168
a secretary	of	111
the secretary	to	169
in sections		87
for security		71
to see	about	11
to see	for oneself	75
to see	through	158

to see	to	172
to see someone	through	161
to seem	like	107
to select	as	34
to select	between	51
be selfish	of someone	118
through selfishness		161
to sell something	for	73
to sell something	off	122–123
the semester	of	116
to send	back	42
to send	for	70
to send	from	79
to send	off	120
to send	to	164
to send	to	165
to send someone	for	70
to send something	out	143
to send something	all over the . . .	153
to send something	through	158
to send something	up	182
a sense	of	112–113
a sense	of	114
to sentence	to	171
to separate something	from	79
to separate	in/into	87
to separate	into	104–105



in September (et al.)		85
in all seriousness		94–95
a servant	of	111
to serve	as	34
to serve	with	193
to serve something	with	193
in a session	with	91
in session		92
to set	above	16
to set	against	23
to set	up	184–188
to set out	for	73
to set something	into	104
to set something	up	184–188
in the seventies		85
to sever	in/into	87
to sever relations	with	195
several	of	113
to sew	to	167
to sew something	out of	144–145
to sew something	over	152
at the sewing machine		37
be sewn	from	81
to shake one's head	in	92–93
with shame		196–197
with shame		191–192
in shape		88–89

get into shape		105
a shape	of	112
be out of shape		144
to shape something	out of	144–145
to share something	among	29
to shave	off	120
to shield something	from	79
to shine	over	151
on a ship		128
to ship	to	164
in for a shock		94
be shocked	at	37
in shoes		89–90
to shoot	at	36
to shop	around	31
to shop	for	70
in short		88
in shorts		89–90
to shout	at	36
to shout	for	70
a shout	of	114–115
to shout	to	165
be shouting	with	196–197
to shove something	in	87
to shove something	off	120
to shove something	toward	174
to shovel something	off	120

to show	around	32
at a show		35
to show	through	158
to show	to	165
to show	up	184–188
to show someone	around	32
to show someone	through	161
to show someone	up	184–188
to shower something	on	127
with a shudder		191–192
to shut	down	64
to shut	off	122
to shut something	off	122
be sick	about	12
be sick	from	81–82
be sick	of	115–116
in sickness		88–89
in sickness		85
from one side	to the other	80–81
be on one's side		128–129
on the side	of	127
side to side		168
down a sidewalk		63
on the sidewalk		126
all over the sidewalk		153
a sigh	of	114–115
to sigh	over	153

with a sigh		191–192
in sight		96–97
the sight	of	114
on sight		135–136
out of sight		145
within sight		199
a sign	of	115
to sign	off	122–124
to sign	up	184–188
to sign someone	up	184–188
in silence		89
the silence	of	114
of silence		116
of silk		115
be silly	about	12
of silver		115
be similar	to	168
to sing	about	11
to sing	along with	27
to sing	for	69
to sing	like	107
to sing	of	115
to sing	to sleep	169–170
to sing	to	165
to sink	to	164
to sip something	out of	143
to sit	across from	18

to sit	around	31
to sit	in back of	43
to sit	on	128
to sit	(all) through	160
to sit	under	177
to sit (down)	beside	49
in a situation	with	91
in the sixties		85
a size	of	112
to skate	down	63
to skate	over	152
on a skateboard		128
on skates		128
with skill		191–192
be skilled	at	38
to skip	around	30
to skip	over	152
in a skirt		89–90
on skis		128
to slap	at	36
a slap	in	92
on a sled		128
to sleep	against	23
to sleep	beside	49
to sleep	on	128
to sleep	(all) through	160
to sleep	under	177

into slices		104–105
to slide	down	63
to slide	off	120
to slide something	off	120
to slip	off	120
to slip	up	184–188
to slip something	off	120
through a slot		158
to smash	into	104
to smash	to bits	169–170
to smear something	on	127
to smear something	with	193
the smell	of	112
the smell	of	114
to smile	at	36
to smile	in	92–93
a smile	of	114–115
with a smile		191–192
be smiling	with	196–197
with a smirk		191–192
through the smoke		158
over snacks		153
to snatch	at	36
to sneer	in	92–93
to snoop	around	31
be above snooping		16
to snort	at	37

in the snow		86–87
with snow		196–197
on a snowboard		128
to soak	to the skin	169–170
in a society		85
of a society	of	111
be soft	on	137
in the game of solitaire		93
the solution	to	168
some	of	113
something	for	69
something	from	79
the songs	of	111
be sore	from	81–82
in a sorority		85
in sorrow		92–93
be sorry	for someone	72
a sort	of	112
at the sound	of	36
the sound	of	112–113
the sound	of	114
to the sound	of	169
to speak	for someone	72
to speak	of	115
to speak	on	132
to speak	to	165
on spec		131

something/nothing special	about	<a href="#">13</a>
of a species	of	<a href="#">111</a>
a speech	about	<a href="#">11</a>
in a speech		<a href="#">84</a>
a speech	on	<a href="#">132</a>
be speechless	at	<a href="#">37</a>
at a speed		<a href="#">38</a>
on high/low speed		<a href="#">134–135</a>
to spend a period of time	with	<a href="#">190</a>
to spill	onto	<a href="#">140</a>
to spill something	on	<a href="#">127</a>
to spill something	onto	<a href="#">140</a>
to spill something	all over the . . .	<a href="#">153</a>
to spin	around	<a href="#">30</a>
in spite	of	<a href="#">94–95</a>
out of spite		<a href="#">145</a>
be spiteful	toward	<a href="#">174</a>
to splash	against	<a href="#">23</a>
to splash something	on	<a href="#">127</a>
to split	in/into	<a href="#">87</a>
to split	up with	<a href="#">195</a>
on the spot		<a href="#">134–135</a>
to spray something	on	<a href="#">127</a>
to spread something	on	<a href="#">127</a>
to spread something	over	<a href="#">152</a>
to spread something	with	<a href="#">193</a>
on a spree		<a href="#">134–135</a>



in (the) spring		85
to sprinkle something	on	127
to sprinkle something	with	193
be sprinkled	about	12
on the squad		132
to squeal	in	92–93
to squeeze someone	in	98
to squeeze something	in	87
to squeeze something	out of	143
to squirt something	on	127
in a stack		90
in stacks		90
on the staff		132
on the stairs		126
to stamp	on	127
to stand	beside	49
to stand	by	58
to stand	for	75
to not stand	for	77
to stand	on	128
to stand	out (from)	146–148
to stand	under	177
to stand	up	184–188
to stand in	for someone	72
to stand in line	for	70
to stand someone	up	184–188
to stand up	for	75

to stand up	for	77
on stand-by		134
to staple	to	167
the star	of	111
to stare	at	36
to stare	into	104
to start	(over) from	79
from start	to finish	81
to start	with	195
to start out	for	73
to start something	over	154
to starve	to death	169–170
be starved	for	70
in a state		84
all over the state		153
through the state		158
all through the state		159–160
within a state		199
a statement	about	11
a statement	to	165
at a station		35
to stay	off	121
to stay	(all) through	160
to stay	with	190
to steal something	from	79
above stealing		16
be beneath stealing		48

be steeped	in	95
in step	with	91
to step	in	98
to step	on	127
to step	onto	140
to step	out of	146–148
to step	out of	143
to step	over	152
to step	up	184–188
to step something	up	184–188
on the steps		126
in a stew		88–89
to stick	to	167
to stick something	on	127
to stick up one's nose	in	92–93
be stiff	with	191–192
out of stock		144
in stocks and bonds		90
in the stomach		92
to stomp	into	104
through a stop sign		158
to stop someone	from	82
at a store		35
to store something	under	177
to store something	with	190
in the storm		86–87
to storm	into	104

a story	about	11
at the stove		37
something/nothing strange	about	13
the strap	to	169
through a straw		158
down a street		63
off the street		120
on the street		126
on the street		127
all over the street		153
up the street		182
up the street		182
of strength		118
the stress	of	117
be strewn	about	12
be strict	on	137
to strike	down	63
to strike	in	92
on strike		134
have two strikes	against	25
of string		115
to strive	for	70
to stroll	along	27
to struggle	against	24
to struggle	through	159
to the strum	of	169
a student	of	111

study	for	70
to study	with	190
from studying		81–82
of studying		116
to stuff something	with	193
to stumble	on	130–131
to stumble	over	152
in style		88
a style	of	112
out of style		144
be submerged	in	95
to submit	to	165
to subscribe	to	171
to substitute	as	34
to substitute	for someone	72
to subtract something	from	79
a subway	to	164
after one's success		20
to suffer	from	81–82
to suffer	through	159
to suggest	to	165
against a suggestion		23
a suggestion	for	69
a suggestion	to	164
in a suit		89–90
in a suitcase		84
in (the) summer		85

over the summer		153
in the sun		86–87
in the sunshine		86–87
be superior	to	168
under supervision		178
under a supervisor		178
be sure	of	117
on the surface	of	127
on a surfboard		128
a surprise	for	69
in for a surprise		94
of surprise		114–115
to one's surprise		165–166
be surprised	at	37
under surveillance		178
to survive	on	130
to suspend something	over	151
under suspicion		178
be suspicious	of	117
to swear	at	36
to swear	by	58
to sweep	with	193
to sweep something	off	120
to sweep something	with	193
be sweet	about	12
be sweet	of someone	118
to swim	across	18

to swim	against	24
go for a swim		75
to swim	up	183
to swing	at	36
to switch something	off	122
be sympathetic	with	191–192
to sympathize	with	194–195
in sympathy	with	91
out of sympathy		145
in sympathy	with	194–195
with sympathy		191–192
in sync		88
out of sync		144
a system	for	70
at a table		35
all over the table		153
by the tablespoonful		56
in (the game of) tag		93
to take	after	22
to take	back to	42
to take	back	42
to take	down	63
to take	down	63
to take	off (from)	79
to take	off	120
to take	off	122–124
to take	on	136

to take	over (from)	154–155
to take	to	165
to take away	from	79
to take off	for	73
to take someone	for	77
to take something back	to/from	42
to take something	for	73
to take something	from	79
to take something	in	98
to take something	in	87
to take something	off	120
to take something	off	122–124
to take something	out	143
to take something	out of	143
to take something	over	154–155
to take something	through	158
to take something	up	182
to take something	up	184–188
to take steps	toward	175
a talent	for	74
with all one's talent		196–197
to talk	about	11
to talk	among	29
to talk	like	107
to talk	of	115
to talk	on	133
to talk	(all) through	160



to talk	with	190
to talk someone	into	106
to talk someone	out of	146–148
on tap		134
on tape		130
to tape	to	167
to tape something	over	152
on target		134
the taste	of	112–113
the taste	of	114
to tattle	on	137
a tax	on	132
over tea		153
to teach	about	12
to teach	for someone	72
a teacher	of	111
under a teacher		178
in teaching		90
against the teachings		23
against a team		23
on the team		132
to tear	into	104
to tear	to pieces	169–170
to tear	to shreds	169–170
to tear	up	184
to tear something	down	63
to tear something	off	120

to tear something	out	143
to tear something	out of	143
to tear something	up	184–188
in tears		88–89
tears	of	114–115
with tears		196–197
to tease someone	for	71
by the teaspoonful		56
in a tee shirt		89–90
off the telephone		121
on the telephone		130
over the telephone		154
on television		135
to tell	about	12
to tell	on	137
to tell	to	165
to tell someone	of	115
to tell something	from	80
one in ten		87
with tenderness		191–192
in (the game of) tennis		93
in tens		90
in terms	of	94–95
on the terrace		126
be terrible	at	38
within a territory		199
the texture	of	112–113

the texture	of	114
with a thank you		191–192
be thankful	for	71
be thankful	to	166–167
with thanks		191–192
of thanksgiving		116
at that		40
at a theater		35
be above theft		16
in theory		94–95
from there		81
a thesis	on	132
through the things		159–160
to think	about	11
to think	back to	42
to think	of	115
to think	up	183
to think something	over	154–155
be thirsty	for	70
at the thought	of	36
be thoughtful	of	118
be thoughtless	of	118
in one's thoughts		85
thoughts	on	132
by the thousands		57
in thousands		93
a threat	to	168

be thrilled	at	37
be thrilled	for someone	72
be thrilled	with	192
to thrive	on	130
about through		13
be through	with	195
to throw	against	23
to throw	at	36
to throw	up	184–188
to throw something	in	87
to throw something	into	104
to throw something	off	120
to throw something	on	127
to throw something	out	143
to throw something	over	152
to throw something	all over the . . .	153
to throw something	toward	174
be thrown	about	12
to thrust	against	23
the ticket	to	169
against the tide		24
with the tide		195
in a tie	with	89–90
to tie something	around	30
to tie something	to	171
be tied	to	169
be tied	with	196

be tied up	with	190
about time		13
time after time		21
at a time		37
by the time		56
a time	of	116
on time		137
out of time		144
(all) through the time		160
from time to time		171
with time		195
for the time being		75
behind the times		46
of tin		115
on tiptoe		128
be tired	from	81–82
be tired	of	115–116
a toast	to	165
on the tip of one's tongue		137
be too hard	for someone	71–72
be too small	for someone	71–72
from top	to bottom	80–81
at the top	of	112
on the top	of	127
on top	of	140
the top	to	169
to toss	at	36

a touch	for	74
in touch	with	91
the touch	of	114
out of touch	with	145
be tough	on	137
about town		12
in a town		84
be in town		84
be out of town		144
all over the town		153
through (the) town		158
all through the town		159–160
around a track		30
on track		134
to trade something	for	73
against traffic		24
with the traffic		195
with the traffic		196–197
the train	for	70
to train	on	130
on a train		128
a train	to	164
for all one's training		74
in training		90
through training		159
to transfer something	onto	140
through a translator		161

to travel	around	30
to travel	on	128
to travel	all over the . . .	153
to travel	with	190
to tread	on	127
above treason		16
the treasurer	of	111
in for a treat		94
to tremble	at	37
to tremble	in	92–93
be trembling	with	196–197
on trial		134
on a tricycle		128
to trip	on	130–131
on a trip		130
to trip	over	152
a trip	to	164
in trouble		88–89
in trouble	with	91
in trouble		92
get into trouble		105
through trouble		159
with the trouble		196–197
by the truckload		57
in truckloads		93
in a trunk		84
in trust		89

in trust		92
be trusting	of	117
the truth	about	11
in truth		94–95
be truthful	with	191–192
to try	out (for)	146–148
to try out	for	70
to try something	on	128
to try something	out	146–148
a tube	of	112
in tune	with	88
out of tune		144
to the tune	of	169
through a tunnel		158
to turn	around	30
to turn	in	98
to turn	on	133
to turn	out	146–148
to turn	over	154–155
to turn	toward	174
to turn	up	184–188
to turn something	around	30
to turn something	down	64
to turn something	in	87
to turn something	off	122–124
to turn something	on	138
to turn something	over	154–155



to turn something	up	184–188
down a turnpike		63
off the turnpike		120
up the turnpike		182
in twenties		90
a type	of	112
be typical	of	118
be unacceptable	to	165–166
be uncertain	of	117
be uncomfortable	with	192
be unconscionable	of someone	118
under the	conditions	178
be understanding	about	12
beyond understanding		53
with understanding		191–192
be unfavorable	to	165–166
be unhappy	about	12
be unhappy	with	192
be unhealthy	for	71
in uniform		89–90
be unimportant	for someone	71
be unimportant	to	165–166
at a university		35
be unkind	about	12
be unnecessary	for someone	71
be unsure	of	117
something/nothing unusual	about	13

be unusual	for someone	71
be up	above	17
be up	against	23
be upset	about	12
be upset	at	37
be upset	with	192
be upside	down	63
to use	as	34
for use		72
be used	to	166–167
be useful	for	71
be useful	for someone	71
be useless	for someone	71
be usual	for someone	71
on vacation		131
on vacation		134
to vaccinate	against	24
the value	of	112–113
from a vantage point		81
in verse		88
be vexing	to	165–166
in view	of	94–95
in one's view		94–95
the villain	of	111
a vision	of	114
in vogue		88
a voice	for	74

in a voice		89
in volleyball		93
on high/low volume		134–135
to volunteer	as	34
to vote	against	23
toward a vote		175
to wait	for	70
to wait	on	137
to wait	(all) through	160
to wait	under	177
to wait for someone	(all) through	160
to wait on someone	(all) through	160
to wake	up	184–188
to wake someone	up	184–188
to walk	about	13
to walk	across	18
to walk	against	24
to walk	along	27
to walk	along with	27
to walk	around	30
to walk	around	31
to walk	back to	42
to walk	back from	42
to walk	beside	49
to walk	down	63
to walk	down	63
go for a walk		75

to walk	in	87
to walk	into	104
to walk	like	107
to walk	off	120
to walk	on	133
to walk	all over the . . .	153
to walk	to	164
to walk	toward	174
to walk	under	177
to walk	up	182
to walk	with	190
to walk away	from	79
off the wall		122–123
on the wall		126
within these walls		199
to wander	about	13
to wander	around	31
to want	for	69
to want someone	for	70
to want something	for	73
at war		37
a war	on	132
(all) through the war		160
be warm	to	167
be warm	toward	174
be wary	of	117
to wash	with	193

to wash something	off	120
to wash something	out (of)	146–148
to wash something	with	193
be wasteful	for someone	71
to watch	out (for)	146–148
to watch	over	151
to watch	(all) through	160
in hot water		88–89
like water		107
of water		115
on water		126
in water colors		88
by the way		58
in a way		89
right of way		118
on the way		134–135
out of the way		144
a way	to	164
up the way		182
to wear something	off	122–124
to wear something	on	128
to wear something	out	146–148
to wear something	over	152
to wear something	under	177
at a wedding		35
on one's wedding		133
(all) through the wedding		160

into wedges		104–105
week after week		21
by the week		56
a week	of	116
(all) through the week		160
on the weekend		133
over the weekend		153
on weekends		129
over the next few weeks		153
to weep	in	92–93
the weight	of	112–113
under weight		177
something/nothing weird	about	13
be well	from	81–82
be well	off	122–123
be well-known	for	71
at the wheel		37
the whiff	of	114
to whirl	around	30
the whisper	of	114
to whistle	for	70
on the whole		129
the width	of	112–113
to win	for	69
against the wind		24
with the wind		195
at a window		35

on the window		126
through the window		158
through the window		158
to wink	at	36
the winner	of	111
in (the) winter		85
over the winter		153
to wipe something	off	122–124
of wire		115
of wisdom		118
to wish	for	70
against one's wishes		23
to wonder	about	11
something/nothing wonderful	about	13
be far from wonderful		68
of wood		115
of wool		115
word	for word	75
with a word		191–192
of few words		118
words	of	114–115
words	of	115
to work	against	23
to work	along with	27
to work	as	34
at work		35
at work		37

to work	beside	49
to work	for	69
to work	for	70
to work	for someone	72
a work	of	111
of work		116
off work		121
to work	on	133
to work	out	146–148
out of work		144
through with work		159
through work		161
go to work		164
to work	toward	175
to work	up	183
to work	with	190
to work	with	194–195
to work	with	192–193
to work something	out	146–148
across the world		18
around the world		30
all over the world		153
be worried	about	12
with the worries		196–197
be worrisome	to	165–166
to worry	about	11
to worry	over	153



to worry	(all) through	160
be worse	for someone	71
be worse	from	81–82
be worse	off	122–123
at worst		39
to wrap	around	30
to wrap something	up	184–188
to wrestle	with	193–194
to write	about	12
to write	for	69
to write	on	132
to write	to	165
to write	with	193
to write something	down (on)	64
to write something	off	122–124
to write something	over	154
to write something	up	184–188
to write something	with	193
the writing	of	111
all over the yard		153
in yards		91
year after year		21
of the, last/next year		111
the year	of	116
(all) through the year		160
for years		74
over the next few years		153

to yell	about	11
to yell	at	36
to yell	for	70
between you and me		51
one's youth	is against	24
of one's youth		111
with zeal		196–197